Oracle Solaris 11 Advanced System Administration

Activity Guide

D72965GC30
Edition 3.0
March 2013
D81025

ORACLE

Author

Vijetha M Malkai

Technical Contributors and Reviewers

Tammy Shannon

Anies Rahman

Rosemary Martinak

Editors

Malavika Jinka

Aju Kumar

Smita Kommini

Graphic Designer

Seema Bopaiah

Publishers

Jayanthy Keshavamurthy

Veena Narasimhan

Table of Contents

Practices for Lesson 1: Introduction

Chapter 1

Practices Overview for Lesson 1

Practices Overview

This practice introduces you to the project assignment that you will be using throughout this course and to your virtual lab environment. The project assignment is divided into multiple phases, which are presented in the checklist in Figure 1. The checklist items are synchronized with the lesson topics.

Project Assignment

Your organization, Delicious Treats Company, is in the business of selling chocolate products online locally and globally. In the United States, the company's order, product, and customer information is stored on 350 servers that are strategically located in various states. Out of these 350 servers, 250 servers are Oracle Solaris x86/64 machines, for instance, Ultra 20s. Currently, the Oracle Solaris servers are running Oracle Solaris 10 or Solaris 9. According to the service-level agreements (SLAs), the business applications on these servers must be up 98% of the time.

The company learned that Oracle has launched Oracle Solaris 11.1, which contains many resource-saving features. The company is convinced that it can use Oracle Solaris 11.1 to its benefit. Therefore, it has issued the directive to upgrade all Oracle Solaris machines to Oracle Solaris 11.1.

As part of the Server Implementation team, you will install and configure Solaris 11.1 on 10 machines on a test basis. This will help you to explore Oracle Solaris 11.1 and prepare you to administer business applications and the operating system. Your senior system administrator has developed a predeployment test plan that consists of a checklist of tasks to be performed (see Figure 1). As you progress through each lesson in the course, you will implement the assigned tasks and report the results to your senior system administrator.

√	Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist
	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
	Managing the Business Application Data
	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
	Managing Services and Service Properties
	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating the System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Figure 1: Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist

Practices Infrastructure

This section presents an architectural view of the equipment and the platforms for the practices. Multiple virtual machines (VMs) are configured on a private internal network (`192.168.0`). Each VM can communicate with other VMs only on the same private network (see Figure 2). The VMs are configured to communicate with the host machine only through the share directory. Internet access is not configured from these VMs.

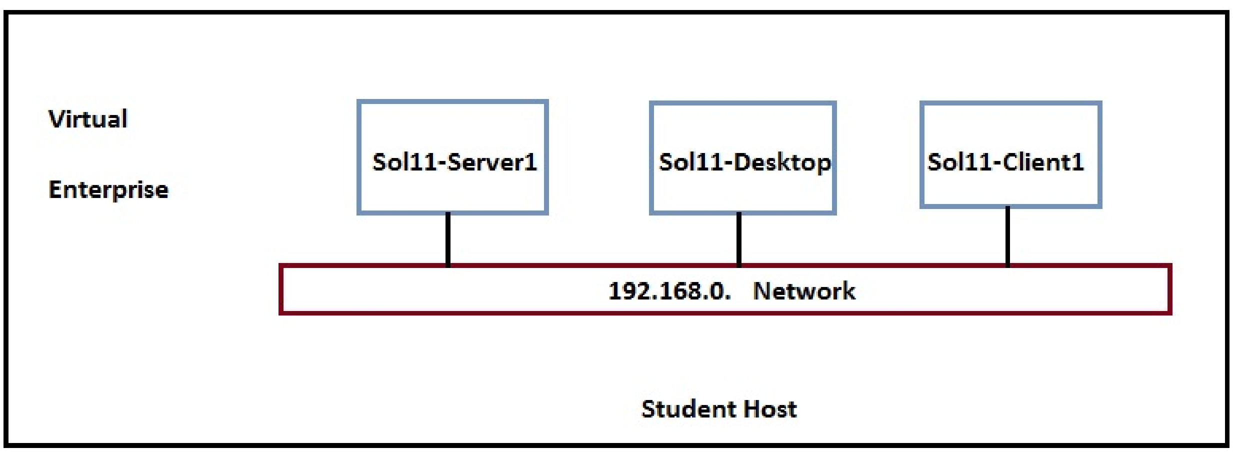


Figure 2: Virtual Pod Network Schematic

Your lab environment is based on the Oracle VM VirtualBox virtualization software. The VirtualBox is a cross-platform virtualization application. Figure 3 shows the configured virtual machines. The Oracle Solaris 11.1 OS is installed in the virtual machines with the exception of Sol11-Client1, which is an empty VM.

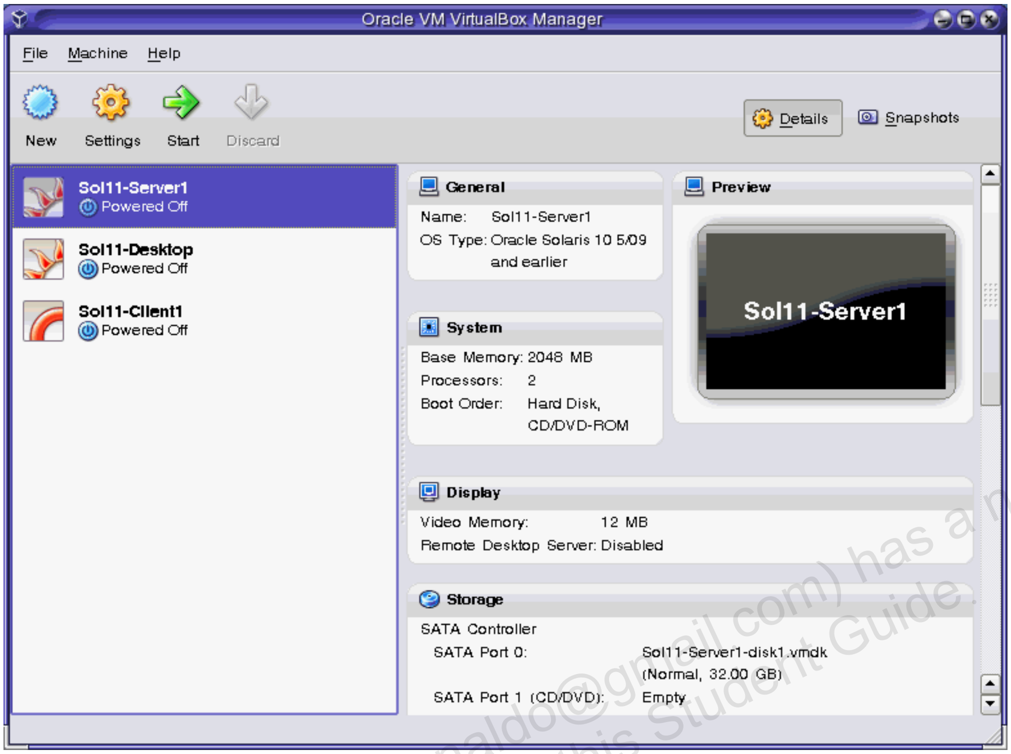


Figure 3: Oracle VirtualBox Virtual Machines

All the VMs are configured with 2 GB of memory. Most of the host machines have a total of 8 GB to work with.

All the student files are located in `/opt/ora/scripts`. This directory contains mostly scripts that you may be directed to use to establish the start or end state of a particular practice.

The following list briefly describes the virtual machines:

- **Sol11-Server1:** This VM provides network services, such as DNS, DHCP, and IPS that are used by other VMs in this virtual network. This VM should always be up and running. You use the command-line tools here.
- **Sol11-Desktop:** This is a general purpose user machine with the GUI and other features normally available on a network client machine. Most of the facilities available in Sol11-Server1 are available in this VM.
- **Sol11-Client1:** This is the VM for Oracle Solaris 11.1 installation that uses Automated Install mode. After performing the practice, switch off this VM. It will not be needed for any other practice.

Logging In to the Practice Environment

When you first log in to the practice environment, you are prompted to provide a login and password for the host system:

- **Userid:** `root`
- **Password:** `oracle`

After you have gained access to the host system, the user account and password for each virtual machine is:

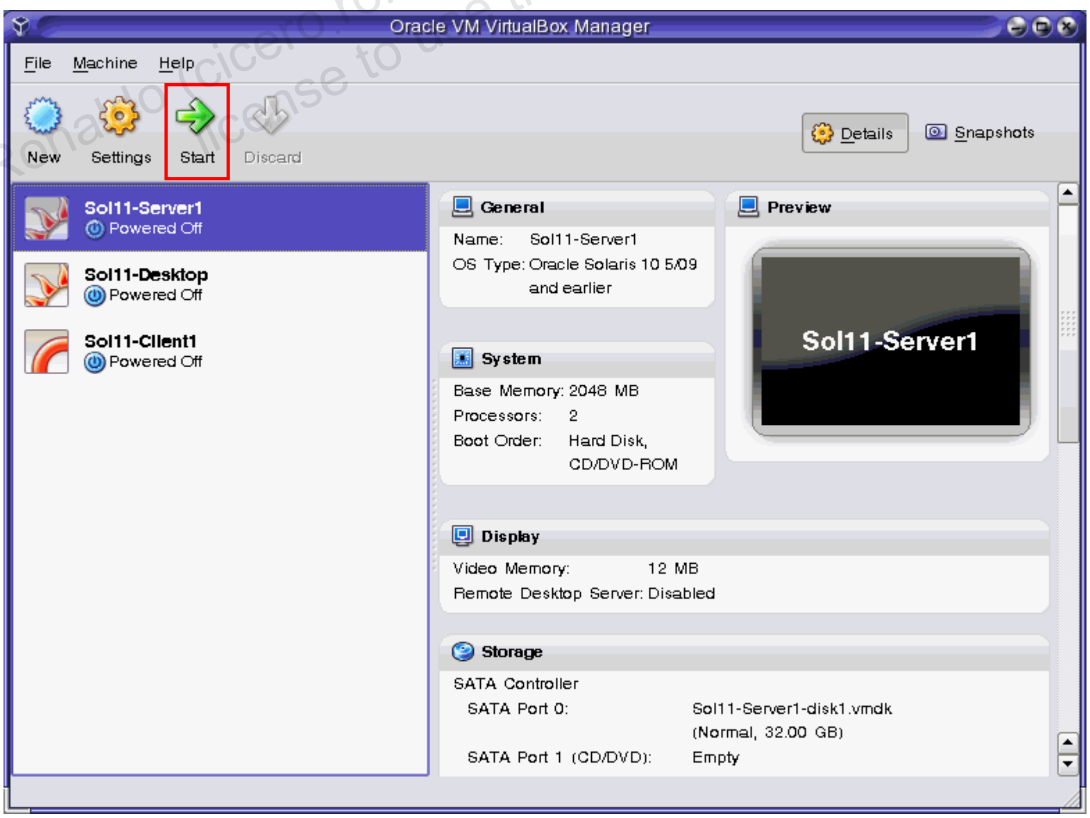
- **User account:** `oracle`
- **Password:** `oracle1`
- **Administrator privileges:** As the `oracle` user, use `su -` to switch to the primary administrator (`root`) role. The password is `oracle1`. The `oracle` user switches to root because root is configured as a role by default. The first username created on the system (during the OS installation) is the initial privileged user who can assume the administrator role. This can be verified in the `/etc/user_attr` file.

Note: The Sol11-Server1 virtual machine must be started *before* any additional virtual machines are started. The *Sol11-Server1 must always be running* to perform the practices in this guide.

Task: Becoming Familiar with Your Practice Environment

1. On your host system, start the Oracle VM VirtualBox Manager by double-clicking its icon on your desktop.

2. In the Oracle VM VirtualBox Manager window, double-click the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine to start it. Alternatively, you can simply select the Sol11-Server1 VM and click the Start button.



3. After the Sol11-Server1 VM is powered on, at the command prompt, log in as the user `oracle` with the password `oracle1`.

```
s11-server1 console login: oracle
Password: oracle1
Last Login: Mon Nov 12 03:59:49 on console
Oracle Corporation SunOS 5.11 11.1 September 2012
Or

oracle@s11-server1:~$
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su –
Password: oracle1
...
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Start the Sol11-Desktop. When the Username login screen appears, enter `oracle` for the username and click the Log In button.

   Note: It might take a few minutes for the Username login screen to appear.

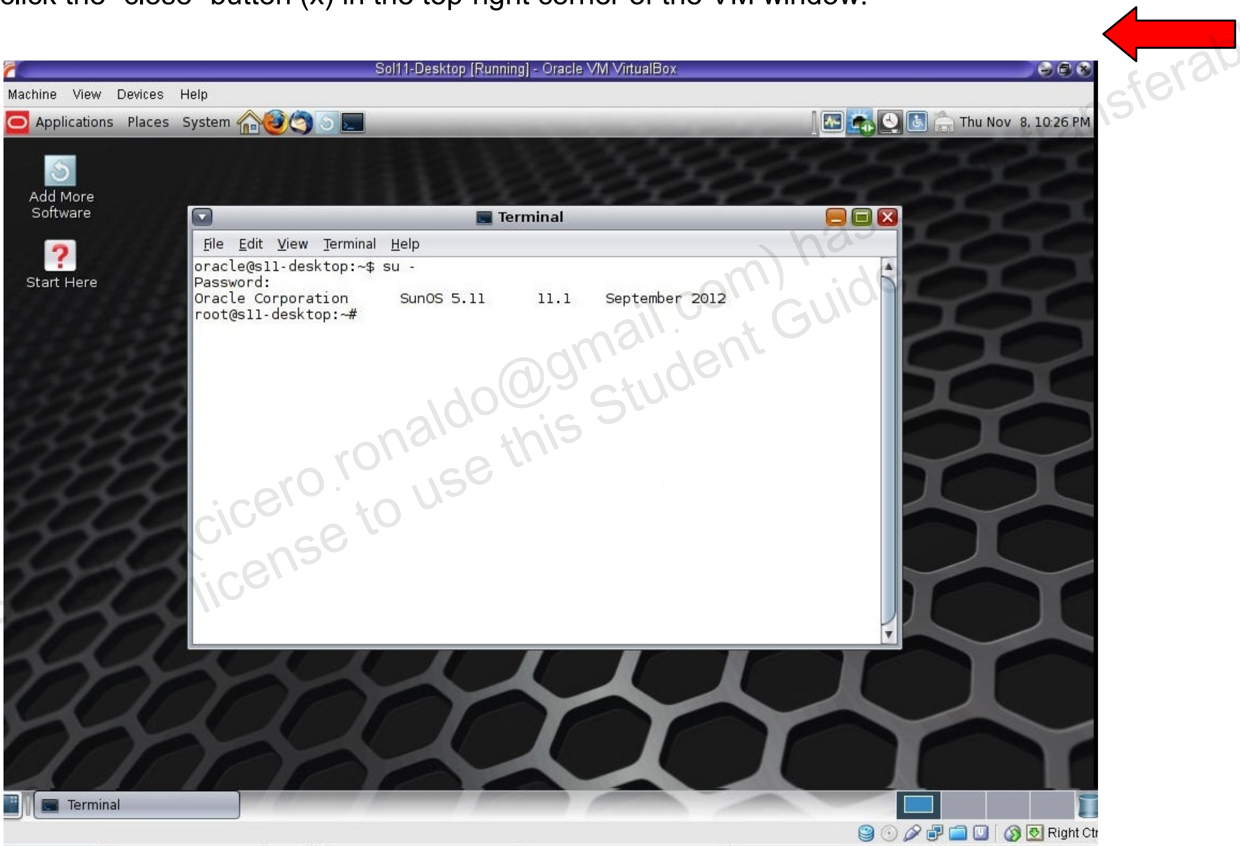
5. When the password login screen appears, enter the password `oracle1` and click the Log In button.

6. Open a terminal window by right-clicking on the desktop and selecting Open Terminal. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume the administrator privileges. The password is `oracle1`.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su –
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.1        September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

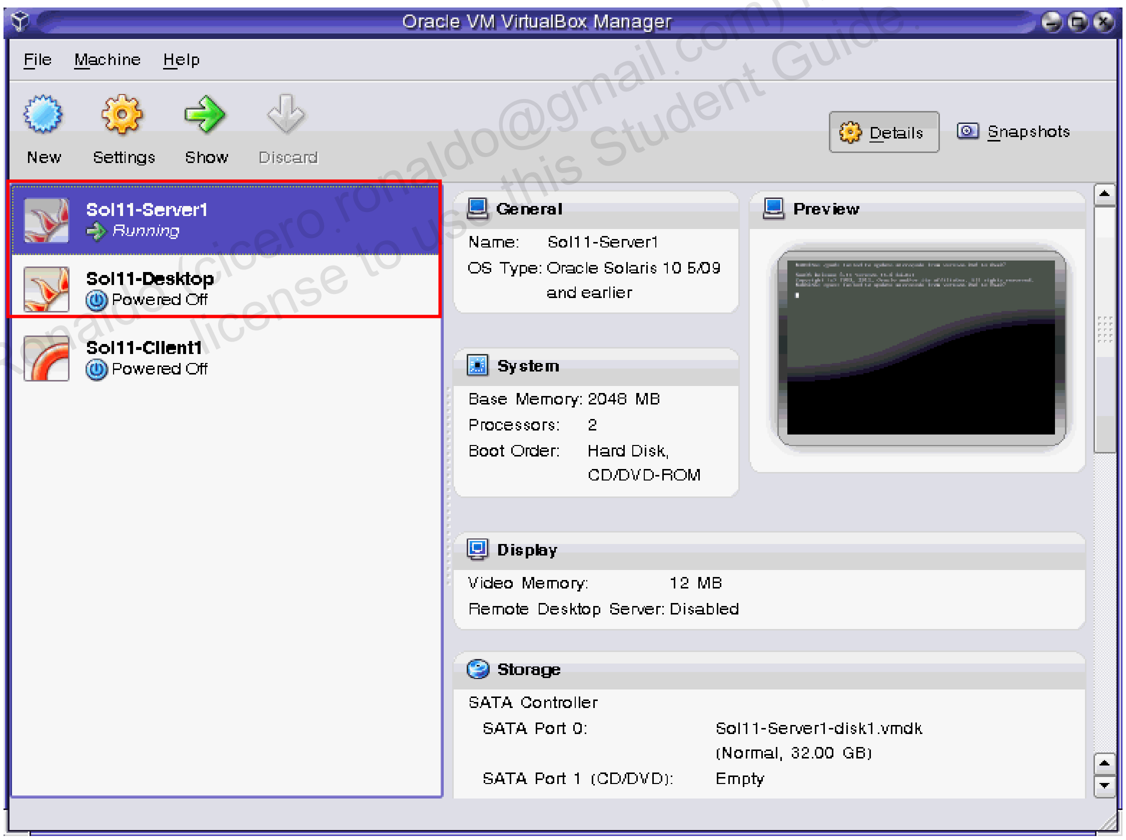
7. At times, you may need to power off a VM and close its window. You may also need to shut down a VM to comply with the maximum recommended number of VMs running simultaneously, which is currently limited to three VMs.

   Now, practice shutting down a VM by using the Sol11-Desktop VM. To shut down the VM, click the "close" button (x) in the top-right corner of the VM window.



8. When the Close Virtual Machine dialog box appears, select “Power off the machine” and click OK.

Note: You can verify that the VM is shut down by checking the status that appears under the VM’s name in the Oracle VM VirtualBox Manager. The status for the Sol11-Desktop should be “Powered Off.” The status for the Sol11-Server1 should be “Running.”



Practices for Lesson 2: Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages

Chapter 2

Practice Overview for Lesson 2

Practices Overview

After installing a new OS, it is a common practice to ensure that you have the IPS Package Repository set up on a local server. In these practices, you will set up a local repository on S11-Server1 and configure a network client to access the repository.

When you install critical software updates, for example, packages updating Solaris kernel facilities, creating another boot environment (BE) is very useful. In case the new package corrupts your system, you can revert to the previous boot environment. So, you can consider the original BE to be more like a backup environment. In the following practices, you will create a backup BE, install the `diffstat` package, and work with multiple BEs. The key areas covered in this practice are:

- Configuring a local IPS package repository
- Configuring a network client to access IPS
- Managing boot environments

Note: Your command output displays may be different than the displays in the practices, especially storage units, process IDs, and related content.

The following checklist shows your progress. Currently, you are about to look into the IPS functionality.

√	Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist
	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
	Managing Business Application Data
	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
	Managing Services and Service Properties
	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Practice 2-1: Configuring a Local IPS Package Repository

Overview

You will recall from the lecture that when you install or upgrade to the Oracle Solaris 11 release, the system initially has one publisher configured: the `solaris` publisher.

In your lab environment, your virtual machine client cannot access the default publisher URL to download the IPS package repository. So your first task is to create your local package repository and make it the default so that the network client can be serviced by IPS.

Tasks

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Determine the host name and domain of this server.

```
root@s11-server1:~# hostname
s11-server1
root@s11-server1:~# domainname
mydomain.com
```

5. Verify that this server can access DNS services.

```
root@s11-server1:~# nslookup s11-server1
Server:     192.168.0.100
Address:    192.168.0.100#53

Name:       s11-server1.mydomain.com
Address:    192.168.0.100
```

6. Verify that the `/export/IPS` file system has been configured on the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME    SIZE  ALLOC   FREE    CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool  31.8G  9.87G  21.9G    31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list
NAME                        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool                      9.94G  21.3G    39K  /rpool
rpool/ROOT                 2.13G  21.3G    31K  legacy
rpool/ROOT/solaris         2.13G  21.3G  1.58G  /
rpool/ROOT/solaris/var      507M  21.3G   505M  /var
rpool/dump                 1.03G  21.3G  1.00G  -
rpool/export               5.74G  21.3G    33K  /export
```

```
rpool/export/IPS           5.74G  21.3G  5.74G  /export/IPS
rpool/export/home           212K  21.3G    37K  /export/home
rpool/export/home/jholt    35.5K  21.3G  35.5K  /export/home/jholt
rpool/export/home/jmoose   35.5K  21.3G  35.5K  /export/home/jmoose
rpool/export/home/oracle     34K  21.3G    34K  /export/home/oracle
rpool/export/home/panna      35K  21.3G    35K  /export/home/panna
rpool/export/home/sstudent   35K  21.3G    35K  /export/home/sstudent
rpool/swap                 1.03G  21.3G  1.00G  -
```

Note: Your display may be different for space allocation/usage.

Normally, a local IPS repository must be manually created on the local server. This involves creating a ZFS file system on the local server for the IPS repository and copying the repository files from the repository ISO image to the local repository.

The following example shows the steps used to copy the IPS repository from the ISO image to a local ZFS file system. **Do not run these commands in this practice.** The repository has already been installed on the local server for you.

```
# zfs create -o compression=on rpool/export/IPS
# lofiadm –a sol-11-1111-repo-full.iso
# mount –F hsfs /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
# rsync –aP /mnt/repo /export/IPS
```

The package repository is very large (approximately 4.4 gigabytes). Depending on the speed of your host machine, the `rsync` command can take a couple of hours to complete.

7. Assess the current IPS configuration on the Sol11-Server1 system:

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs application/pkg/server
STATE        STIME       FMRI
disabled     17:00:56    svc:/application/pkg/server:default
root@s11-server1:~# svcprop -p pkg/inst_root application/pkg/server
/var/pkgrepo
```

This system is not currently configured as an IPS server (the service is disabled). Note the default location of the IPS repository as determined by the `pkg/inst_root` property. The `/var/pkgrepo` directory is not the correct location of your local repository.

8. Determine whether the IPS service is currently available:

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg search entire
pkg: Some repositories failed to respond appropriately:
solaris:
Unable to contact valid package repository
Encountered the following error(s):
Unable to contact any configured publishers.
This is likely a network configuration problem.
Framework error: code: 6 reason: Couldn't resolve host 'pkg.oracle.com'
```

```
URL: 'http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release' (happened 4 times)
```

Note: This step will be especially useful on the job because you can see the displayed URL. In the training environment, your publisher URL will point to s11-server1.

Searching for a package is a quick way of determining whether the IPS service is available. Based on the results shown here, this system has no access to the IPS service.

9. Set the `application/pkg/server` service `pkg/inst_root` property to the repository location (`/export/IPS/repo`).

```
root@s11-server1:~# svccfg -s application/pkg/server setprop \
pkg/inst_root=/export/IPS/repo
root@s11-server1:~#
```

10. Set the `application/pkg/server` service `pkg/readonly` property to `true`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svccfg -s application/pkg/server setprop \
pkg/readonly=true
```

11. Verify the `application/pkg/server` service `inst_root` property.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcprop -p pkg/inst_root \
application/pkg/server
/export/IPS/repo
```

12. Refresh the `application/pkg/server` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm refresh application/pkg/server
```

13. Enable the `application/pkg/server` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm enable application/pkg/server
```

14. Verify that the `application/pkg/server` service is enabled.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs application/pkg/server
STATE       STIME       FMRI
online      17:00:56    svc:/application/pkg/server:default
```

15. Use the `pkgrepo refresh` command to refresh the package repository.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkgrepo refresh -s /export/IPS/repo
Initiating repository refresh.
```

When you create a new package repository, you must refresh the repository catalog so that the package search operations will work correctly. This may take several minutes to complete.

16. List the current package publishers.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg publisher

PUBLISHER            TYPE    STATUS P LOCATION
solaris              origin online F http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/
```

The command output shows the current *publisher*. A publisher is a forward domain name that identifies a person, group of persons, or an organization that publishes one or more packages. The repository type *origin* is the location of the package repository that contains both package metadata (package manifests and catalogs) and package content (package files). The default publisher URI is http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/.

17. Remove the current publisher URI (http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release) and add a new URI (http://s11-server1.mydomain.com) to the publisher name `solaris`. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg set-publisher –G '*' –g \
http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/ solaris

root@s11-server1:~# pkg publisher
PUBLISHER            TYPE       STATUS URI
solaris              origin     online http://s11-server1.mydomain.com
```

18. Test IPS on the local server by searching for the `entire` package.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg search entire
INDEX       ACTION    VALUE           PACKAGE
pkg.fmri    set     solaris/entire   pkg:/entire@0.5.11-0.175.0.0.0.2.0
```

Practice 2-2: Configuring a Network Client to Access the Local IPS Server

Overview

Now that you have a local package repository set up, you must configure the network clients to access the new repository. By default, clients are configured to use the publisher http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/. In this task, you reconfigure the client to access the http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/ package publisher `solaris`.

Tasks

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su` command to assume primary administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Verify that this client can access DNS services by resolving the IPS server host name.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# nslookup s11-server1
Server:     192.168.0.100
Address:    192.168.0.100#53

Name:       s11-server1.mydomain.com
Address:    192.168.0.100
```

6. Verify that this client can ping the IPS server.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# ping s11-server1
s11-server1 is alive
```

7. List the current package publishers.

This is what you can expect to see on the job because this is the default origin URL.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# pkg publisher
PUBLISHER      TYPE       STATUS P LOCATION
solaris        origin     online F http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/
```

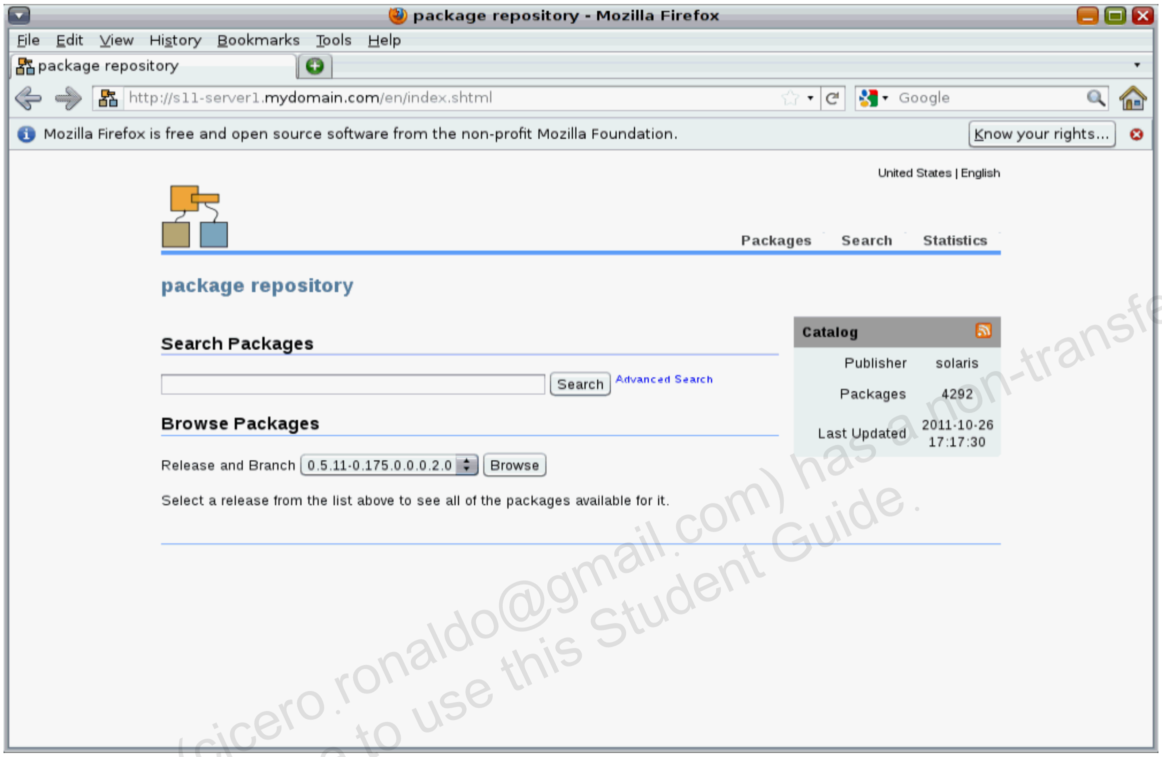
8. Remove the current publisher URI (http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release) and add a new URI (http://s11-server1.mydomain.com) to the publisher name `solaris`.

```
root@ s11-desktop:~# pkg set-publisher –G '*' –g \
http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/ solaris
```

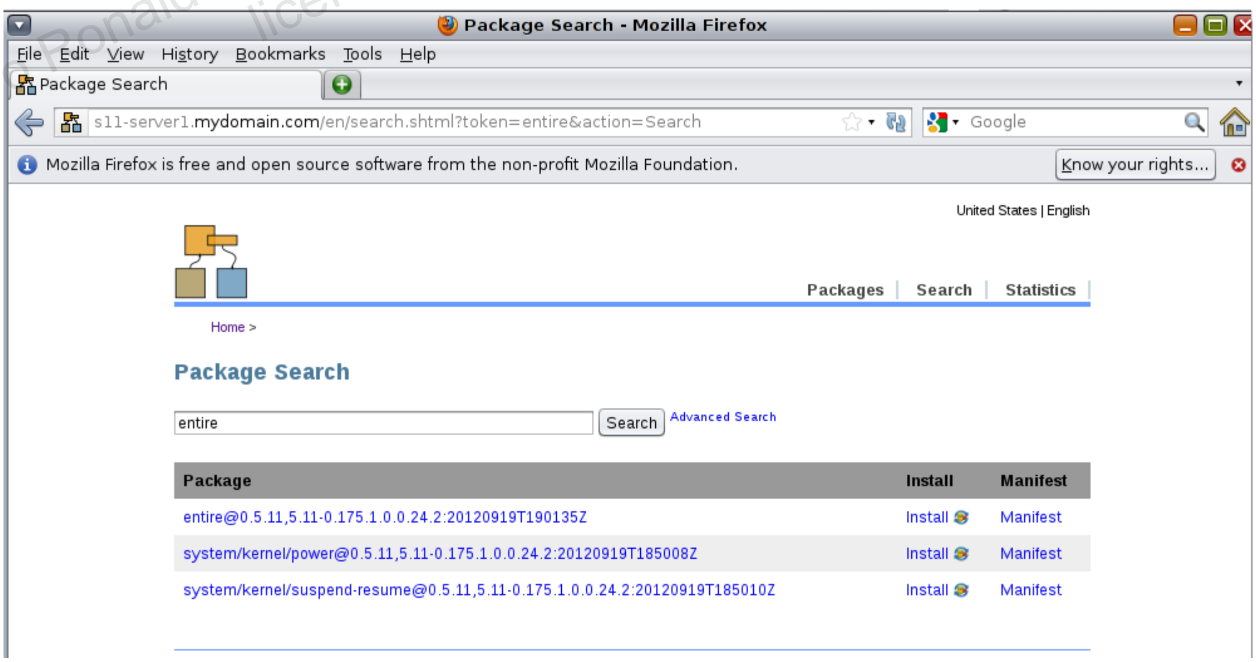
9. Verify that the publisher is set to http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# pkg publisher
PUBLISHER              TYPE       STATUS P LOCATION
solaris                origin     online F http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/
```

10. Test client access to the IPS server by opening the http://s11-server1.mydomain.com URL in the Firefox browser.



11. Using the package repository browser, search for the `entire` package.



12. Close the Firefox browser.
13. Close the Sol11-Desktop VM.

Practice 2-3: Managing Multiple Boot Environments

Overview

In this practice, you create a new full BE based on the current BE. The current BE does not have the `diffstat` package installed. You make the new BE the active boot environment and you update it with the `diffstat` package. You reboot to the original boot environment to prove that the two BEs are now logically separate. This action is also useful in case the `diffstat` package is corrupted and you want to revert to the original environment.

As part of this practice, you also mount and update an inactive BE. In addition, you create another BE (a copy of the current BE) and a backup copy. This will demonstrate to you how to manage multiple BEs on the system.

To run this practice, you must be logged in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user and have obtained primary administrator privileges. See Practice 2-2 if you need help.

Note: Your display outputs may differ slightly.

Tasks

1. In a terminal window on the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine, list the current BEs.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE        Active Mountpoint Space  Policy Created
--        ------ ---------- -----  ------ -------
solaris   NR    /          2.84G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
```

The Active field indicates whether the boot environment is active now (`N`) and active on reboot (`R`).

2. Clone the current active BE. Name the clone `solaris-1`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm create solaris-1
```

3. List the current BEs.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE        Active Mountpoint Space  Policy Created
--        ------ ---------- -----  ------ -------
solaris   NR     /          2.84G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1 -      -         164.0K  static 2012-12-09 07:01
```

4. Activate the `solaris-1` BE. Display the list of BEs. Note that `solaris-1` is pending activation on reboot.

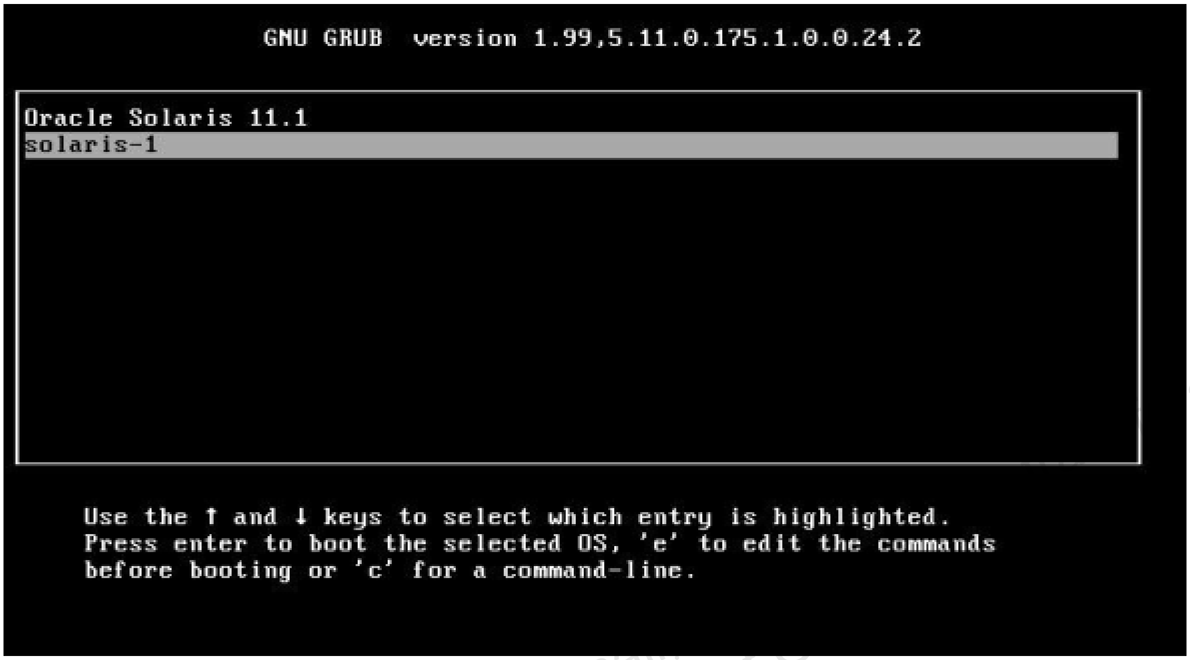
```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm activate solaris-1
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE        Active Mountpoint Space  Policy Created
--        ------ ---------- -----  ------ -------
solaris   N      /         469.0K  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1 R      -          2.84G  static 2012-12-09 07:01
```

The activation process will take a short amount of time to store the data in the partition.

5. Reboot the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine.

```
root@s11-server1:~# init 6
```

Notice that `solaris-1` is now the default boot entry in the GRUB menu.



6. After Sol11-Server1 has rebooted, log in as the `oracle` user and `su` to `root`.
7. In a terminal window, list the current BEs.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE        Active Mountpoint Space  Policy Created
--        ------ ---------- -----  ------ -------
solaris   -      -          4.60M  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1 NR     /          2.89G  static 2012-12-09 07:01
```

Note that the `solaris-1` image is now active.

8. Verify that the `diffstat` package is not currently installed on the new active BE.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg list diffstat
pkg list: no packages matching "diffstat' installed
```

9. Install the `diffstat` package on the new active BE.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg install diffstat
Creating plan...
               Packages to install:     1
           Create boot environment:    No
    Create backup boot environment:    No
DOWNLOAD                            PKGS        FILES    XFER (MB)
Completed                            1/1          6/6      0.0/0.0

PHASE                                        ACTIONS
Install Phase                                  24/24
```

```
PHASE                                                 ITEMS
Package State Update Phase                              1/1
Image State Update Phase                                2/2
```

10. Activate the `solaris` BE. Display the list of BEs. Note that `solaris` is pending activation on reboot.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm activate solaris
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE         Active Mountpoint Space  Policy Created
--         ------ ---------- -----  ------ -------
solaris    R      -          2.84G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1  N      /          72.06M static 2012-12-09 07:01
```

11. Reboot the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine. After Sol11-Server1 has rebooted, log in as the `oracle` user and `su` to `root`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# init 6
```

12. Verify that the `solaris` image is now active and that the `diffstat` package is not installed.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE         Active Mountpoint Space   Policy Created
--         ------ ---------- -----   ------ -------
solaris    NR     /          2.89G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1  -      -          76.03M  static 2012-12-09 07:01
root@s11-server1:~# pkg list diffstat
pkg list: no packages matching "diffstat' installed
```

13. Mount the inactive BE.

```
root@s11-server1:~# mkdir -p /solaris-1
root@s11-server1:~# beadm mount solaris-1 /solaris-1
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE         Active Mountpoint  Space   Policy Created
--         ------ ----------  -----   ------ -------
solaris    NR     /           2.89G   static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1  -      /solaris-1  76.03M  static 2012-12-09 07:01
```

14. Verify that the `diffstat` package is installed in the inactive BE:

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg -R /solaris-1 verify -v diffstat
Verifying: PACKAGE                                   STATUS
pkg://solaris/text/diffstat                          OK
```

15. Remove the `diffstat` package from the mounted inactive BE.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg -R /solaris-1 uninstall diffstat
Creating Plan…
            Packages to remove:        1
     Estimated space available: 28.45 GB
```

```
Estimated space to be consumed: 14.58 MB
          Rebuild boot archive:       No

Changed packages:
solaris
  text/diffstat
    1.51,5.11-0.175.1.0.0.9.0:20120207T035254Z -> None
PHASE                                              ITEMS
Removing old actions                               19/19
Updating package state database                     Done
Updating package cache                               1/1
Updating image state                                Done
Creating fast lookup database                       Done
root@s11-server1:~# pkg -R /solaris-1 list diffstat
pkg list: no packages matching "diffstat' installed
```

16. Unmount the inactive BE.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm unmount solaris-1
```

17. Create a snapshot of the `solaris` BE. Name the snapshot `backup`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm create solaris@backup
```

18. Display the list of snapshots associated with the `solaris` BE.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list -a solaris
BE/Dataset/Snapshot               Active Mountpoint Space   Policy Created
-------------------               ------ ---------- -----   ------ -------
solaris
   rpool/ROOT/solaris             NR     /          2.17G   static 2012-11-30 08:47
   rpool/ROOT/solaris/var         -      /var       518.90M static 2012-11-30 08:47
   rpool/ROOT/solaris/var@2012... -      -          1.22M   static 2012-12-09 07:01
   rpool/ROOT/solaris/var@backup  -      -          0       static 2012-12-09 07:18
   rpool/ROOT/solaris@backup      -      -          0       static 2012-12-09 07:18
   rpool/ROOT/solaris/var@install -      -          144.54M static 2012-11-30 08:51
…
…
…
```

19. Create a new boot environment from the `solaris@backup` snapshot. Name this BE `solaris-2`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm create -e solaris@backup solaris-2
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE        Active Mountpoint Space   Policy Created
--        ------ ---------- -----   ------ -------
solaris   NR     /           2.89G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1 -      -          76.03M  static 2012-12-09 07:01
solaris-2 -      -          130.0K  static 2012-12-09 07:26
```

20. Destroy the `solaris-2` BE and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm destroy solaris-2
Are you sure you want to destroy solaris-2?  This action cannot
be undone(y/[n]): y
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE         Active Mountpoint Space  Policy Created
--         ------ ---------- -----  ------ -------
solaris    NR     /           2.89G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-1  -      -          76.23M  static 2012-12-09 07:01
```

21. Rename the original `solaris-1` BE to `solaris-alt`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm rename solaris-1 solaris-alt
```

22. List the boot environments.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE            Active Mountpoint Space  Policy  Created
--            ------ ---------- -----  ------  -------
solaris       NR     /          2.89G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
solaris-alt   -      -          76.23M static 2012-12-09 07:01
```

23. Destroy the `solaris-alt` BE and then verify that it has been removed.

```
root@s11-server1:~# beadm destroy solaris-alt
Are you sure you want to destroy solaris-1? This action cannot be
undone(y/[n]): y
root@s11-server1:~# beadm list
BE         Active Mountpoint Space   Policy Created
--         ------ ---------- -----   ------ -------
solaris    NR     /           2.89G  static 2012-11-30 08:47
```

The next time you reboot the system, you will see only the `solaris` BE present on the GNU GRUB menu.

Practices for Lesson 3: Installing Oracle Solaris 11 on Multiple Hosts

Chapter 3

Practice Overview for Lesson 3

Practices Overview

According to the predeployment plan and checklist, you will now start configuring the Automated Installer (AI). The AI configuration practices help you to understand how you can save time and resources while installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on multiple client hosts individually.

√	**Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist**
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
	Managing the Business Application Data
	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
	Managing Services and Service Properties
	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

In the following practices, you install Oracle Solaris 11.1 OS on an x86/64 machine in an automated, unattended manner. Your first task is to verify that the system meets the AI requirements. In the second task, you configure the AI on a server. Then as a final step, you deploy the OS on a network client.

Before you install the Oracle Solaris 11.1 OS by using AI, you must first download the Oracle Solaris 11.1 AI install image from the following site:

http://www.oracle.com/technetwork/server-storage/solaris11/downloads/index.html.

The AI installation download is in an ISO image format that can be burned to a CD or DVD, or used directly within Oracle VM Server or other virtualization software.

> **Note:** For training purposes, the AI ISO has already been downloaded for you. The ISO image file can be found in the `/root` directory of the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine.

Practice 3-1: Verifying the System AI Requirements (Optional)

Overview

This practice takes you through the steps for checking the existing version of Oracle Solaris 11.1 to verify the system requirements for the AI installation. For the purposes of AI configuration, you need to configure the IPS repository on the local VM (S11-Server1) so that you can minimize the package deployment.

> **Note:** If you have completed Practice 2 during Lesson 2, skip this practice. It is included here as a checkpoint prerequisite because you need to ensure that the IPS repository is properly configured before you configure AI.

> **Note:** Your command output displays may be different than the displays in the practice, especially allocation and utilization, process IDs, and similar information.

Tasks

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running.
   If the virtual machine is not running, start it at this time.
2. Log in to virtual machine Sol11-Server1 as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su` command to assume primary administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation      SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Verify that the operating system is Oracle Solaris 11 Build 173 release.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cat /etc/release
                          Oracle Solaris 11.1 X86
  Copyright (c) 1983, 2012, Oracle and/or its affiliates.  All
rights reserved.
                            Assembled 19 September 2012
```

5. Verify that the operating system is configured with a static IP address.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs network/physical:default
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         0:24:39   svc:/network/physical:default
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ           TYPE     STATE        ADDR
…
net0/v4           static   ok           192.168.0.100/24
…
```

6. Verify that DNS is operational.

```
root@s11-server1:~# nslookup s11-server1.mydomain.com
Server:         192.168.0.100
Address:        192.168.0.100#53

Name:   s11-server1.mydomain.com
Address: 192.168.0.100
```

7. Verify that the `/export/IPS` file system has been configured in the `rpool` on the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.98G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list
NAME                        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool                      9.95G  21.3G    39K  /rpool
rpool/ROOT                 2.14G  21.3G    31K  legacy
rpool/ROOT/solaris         2.14G  21.3G  1.58G  /
rpool/ROOT/solaris/var      517M  21.3G   373M  /var
rpool/dump                 1.03G  21.3G  1.00G  -
rpool/export               5.74G  21.3G    33K  /export
rpool/export/IPS           5.74G  21.3G  5.74G  /export/IPS
rpool/export/home           212K  21.3G    37K  /export/home
rpool/swap                 1.03G  21.3G  1.00G  -
```

Note: Your display may be slightly different based on the type of disks and platform.

Normally, a local IPS repository must be manually created on the local server. This involves creating a ZFS file system on the local server for the IPS repository and copying the repository files from the repository ISO image to the local repository.

The following example shows you the steps to copy the IPS repository from the ISO image to a local ZFS file system. **Do not run these commands in this practice.** The repository has already been installed on the local server for you.

```
# zfs create -o compression=on rpool/export/IPS
# lofiadm –a sol-11-1111-repo-full.iso
# mount –F hsfs /dev/lofi/1 /mnt
# rsync –aP /mnt/repo /export/IPS
```

The package repository is very large (over 6 GB). Depending on the speed of your host machine, the `rsync` command can take a couple of hours to complete.

8. Assess the current IPS configuration on the Sol11-Server1 system:

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs application/pkg/server
STATE        STIME       FMRI
disabled     0:24:39     svc:/application/pkg/server:default

root@s11-server1:~# svcprop -p pkg/inst_root application/pkg/server
/var/pkgrepo
```

This system is not currently configured as an IPS server (the service is disabled). Note the default location of the IPS repository as determined by the `pkg/inst_root` property. The `/var/pkgrepo` directory is not the correct location of your local repository.

Note: When you configure IPS for the first time, you will see this default value. It is shown here for that purpose. You will change it to the local ZFS file system.

9. Set the `pkg/inst_root` property of the `application/pkg/server` service to the local repository location `/export/IPS/repo`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svccfg -s application/pkg/server setprop \
pkg/inst_root=/export/IPS/repo
root@s11-server1:~#
```

10. Set the `pkg/readonly` property of the `application/pkg/server` service to `true`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svccfg -s application/pkg/server setprop \
pkg/readonly=true
```

11. Verify the `inst_root` property of the `application/pkg/server` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcprop -p pkg/inst_root \
application/pkg/server
/export/IPS/repo
```

12. Refresh the `application/pkg/server` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm refresh application/pkg/server
```

13. Enable the `application/pkg/server` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm enable application/pkg/server
```

14. Verify that the `application/pkg/server` service is enabled.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs application/pkg/server
STATE      STIME      FMRI
online     0:24:39    svc:/application/pkg/server:default
```

15. Use the `pkgrepo refresh` command to refresh the package repository.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkgrepo refresh -s /export/IPS/repo
```

When you create a new package repository, you must refresh the repository catalog so that the package search operations will work correctly. This may take several minutes to complete.

16. List the current package publishers.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg publisher
PUBLISHER      TYPE        STATUS  P LOCATION
solaris        origin      online  F http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/
```

The command output shows the current *publisher*. A publisher is a forward domain name that identifies a person, group of persons, or an organization that publishes one or more packages. The repository type *origin* is the location of a package repository that contains both package metadata (package manifests and catalogs) and package content (package files). The default publisher URI is http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/.

17. Remove the current publisher URI (http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/) and add a new URI (http://s11-server1.mydomain.com) to the publisher name `solaris`. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg set-publisher -G \
http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/ \
-g http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/ solaris
root@s11-server1:~# pkg publisher
PUBLISHER              TYPE       STATUS P LOCATION
solaris                origin     online F http://s11-server1.mydomain.com
```

Note: The value specified after the `-G` option is also mentioned here as the original default that you will see while installing the repository for the first time. In the lab environment, use the value displayed in the previous step.

Practice 3-2: Configuring the AI Server

Overview

After you have verified that the server meets the AI requirements, you are ready to configure the AI server. After the configuration is complete, you will be able to install the Oracle Solaris 11.1 OS on one or more client hosts. This practice will set up a DHCP server as part of the configuration. This DHCP server allocates an IP address to the client host.

Tasks

Note: Because you are not using the default IPS service, you need to adjust the default AI service accordingly.

1. On the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine, check whether the `svc:/network/dns/multicast` service is online. If the service is not online, enable it.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs network/dns/multicast
STATE          STIME    FMRI
disabled        1:08:14 svc:/network/dns/multicast:default
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm enable network/dns/multicast
root@s11-server1:~# svcs network/dns/multicast
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         1:32:27 svc:/network/dns/multicast:default
```

2. Verify that the `netmasks` file is configured appropriately for the DHCP service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# getent netmasks 192.168.0.0
```

Note that DHCP requires that the network mask for the local subnet is configured in the `/etc/netmasks` file. If an entry does not exist, update the `netmasks` file now.

```
# vi /etc/netmasks
…
192.168.0.0 255.255.255.0
root@s11-server1:~# getent netmasks 192.168.0.0
192.168.0.0          255.255.255.0
```

3. Use the `installadm create-service` command to create an AI service based on the following information:
   - Service name: `basic_ai`
   - DHCP base IP address: `192.168.0.130`
   - DHCP IP address range: `5`
   - AI ISO image location: `/opt/ora/iso/sol-11_1-ai-x86.iso`
   - Target directory: `/export/ai/basic_ai`

```
root@s11-server1:~# installadm create-service -n basic_ai \
-s /opt/ora/iso/sol-11_1-ai-x86.iso -i 192.168.0.130 \
-c 5 -d /export/ai/basic_ai
```

```
Creating service from: /opt/ora/iso/sol-11_1-ai-x86.iso
Setting up the image ...

Creating i386 service: basic_ai

Image path: /export/ai/basic_ai


Starting DHCP server...

Adding IP range to local DHCP configuration


Unable to determine a route for network 192.168.0.0. Setting the
route
temporarily to 0.0.0.0; this should be changed to an appropriate
value
in the DHCP configuration file. Please see dhcpd(8) for further
information.

Refreshing install services

Creating default-i386 alias

Setting the default PXE bootfile(s) in the local DHCP
configuration
to:
bios clients (arch 00:00):  default-i386/boot/grub/pxegrub2
uefi clients (arch 00:07):  default-
i386/boot/grub/grub2netx64.efi


Refreshing install services
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Note: If a warning message "Unable to determine a route…" appears, ignore it because it is caused by the virtual machine network configuration. The same is true for any other warnings. These messages have no impact on this practice.

Note: If you need to, you can remove an AI service and its associated clients by using the command `installadm delete-service -r svcname`.

4. Use the `installadm list` command to verify that your AI service is installed.

```
root@s11-server1:~# installadm list

Service Name Alias Of   Status  Arch   Image Path
------------ --------   ------  ----   ----------
basic_ai   -            on      i386    /export/ai/basic_ai
default-i386 basic_ai   on      i386    /export/ai/basic_ai
```

5. Use the `installadm create-client` command to add the client MAC address for the Sol11-Client1 virtual machines to the `basic_ai` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# installadm create-client -e \
08:00:27:85:C7:D6 -n basic_ai
Adding host entry for 08:00:27:85:C7:D6 to local DHCP
configuration.
```

Note that, on the job, you will not encounter duplicate MAC addresses on your network. You should verify carefully what your actual network client systems' MAC addresses are in order to properly install Oracle Solaris 11.1 on them.

Note: Use the MAC addresses observed on your system.

6. Use the `installadm list –c` command to verify that the client was added to the AI server `basic_ai`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# installadm list -c
Service Name  Client Address     Arch   Image Path
------------  --------------     ----   ----------
basic_ai      08:00:27:85:C7:D6  i386   /export/ai/basic_ai
```

7. Create the directory `/var/tmp/manifests` to store the AI manifest files.

```
root@s11-server1:~# mkdir -p /var/tmp/manifests
```

8. Copy the default manifest file to the `/var/tmp/manifests/basic_ai.xml` file so that you can modify it for your configuration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp \
/export/ai/basic_ai/auto_install/manifest/default.xml  \
/var/tmp/manifests/basic_ai.xml
```

Note: In the previous step, the `/var/tmp/manifests/basic_ai.xml` file is created read only. Before editing, you can change the permissions to 755 (using the command `chmod 755 basic_ai.xml`) or ignore the warning from the vi editor and save it with the "`wq!`" command.

9. Using the `vi` editor, modify the `auto_install` section of the `/var/tmp/manifests/basic_ai.xml` file and use the following data.

   `auto_install` manifest:

   - AI instance name (`ai_instance name`): `basic_ai` and add `auto_reboot="true"`
   - IPS origin URI: `http://s11-server1.mydomain.com`
   - IPS package: `entire` (confirm that it uses the `entire` package)
   - IPS package: `solaris-large-server` (confirm that it uses the `solaris-large-server` package)

10. Use the `diff` command to view the differences between the `basic_ai.xml` file and the `default.xml` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# diff /var/tmp/manifests/basic_ai.xml \
/export/ai/basic_ai/auto_install/manifest/default.xml
27c27
<    <ai_instance name="basic_ai" auto_reboot="true" >
---
>    <ai_instance name="default">
40c40
<         <origin name="http://s11-server1.mydomain.com"/>
---
>         <origin name="http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release"/>
```

This output shows you the modifications that you made to the `basic_ai.xml` file.

11. Create a MAC address–based criteria file named `criteria_ai.xml` in the `/var/tmp/manifests` directory. Use the MAC address of the network client Sol11-Client1.

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi /var/tmp/manifests/criteria_ai.xml
<ai_criteria_manifest>
    <ai_criteria name="mac">
      <value>08:00:27:85:C7:D6</value>
    </ai_criteria>
</ai_criteria_manifest>
```

Note: If the AI client does not match the criteria for a service (in this case, a specific MAC address), the AI service will use the default manifest when installing the OS.

12. Add the `basic_ai` manifest and criteria file to the `basic_ai` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# installadm create-manifest –n basic_ai \
-f /var/tmp/manifests/basic_ai.xml \
-C /var/tmp/manifests/criteria_ai.xml
```

When a custom AI manifest (`basic_ai.xml`, in this example) is defined for this install service and the client matches the criteria specified (in the `criteria_ai.xml` file) for the custom AI manifest, the client will use that manifest. In cases where client characteristics match multiple AI manifests, the client characteristics are evaluated in the following order: `mac`, `ipv4`, `platform`, `arch`, `cpu`, and `mem`.

If the client does not match the criteria for any custom AI manifest, the client uses the default AI manifest.

13. Use the `installadm list –m` command to verify that your manifest and the criteria have been added to the `basic_ai` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# installadm list -m
Service/Manifest Name     Status      Criteria
---------------------     --------    --------
basic_ai
    basic_ai                          mac = 08:00:27:85:C7:D6
   orig_default           Default     None
default-i386
    orig_default          Default     None

root@s11-server1:~# installadm list -m -n basic_ai
Service/Manifest Name       Status   Criteria
---------------------       ------   --------
basic_ai
    basic_ai                         mac = 08:00:27:85:C7:D6
    orig_default            Default  None
```

Practice 3-3: Deploying the OS on the Network Client

Overview

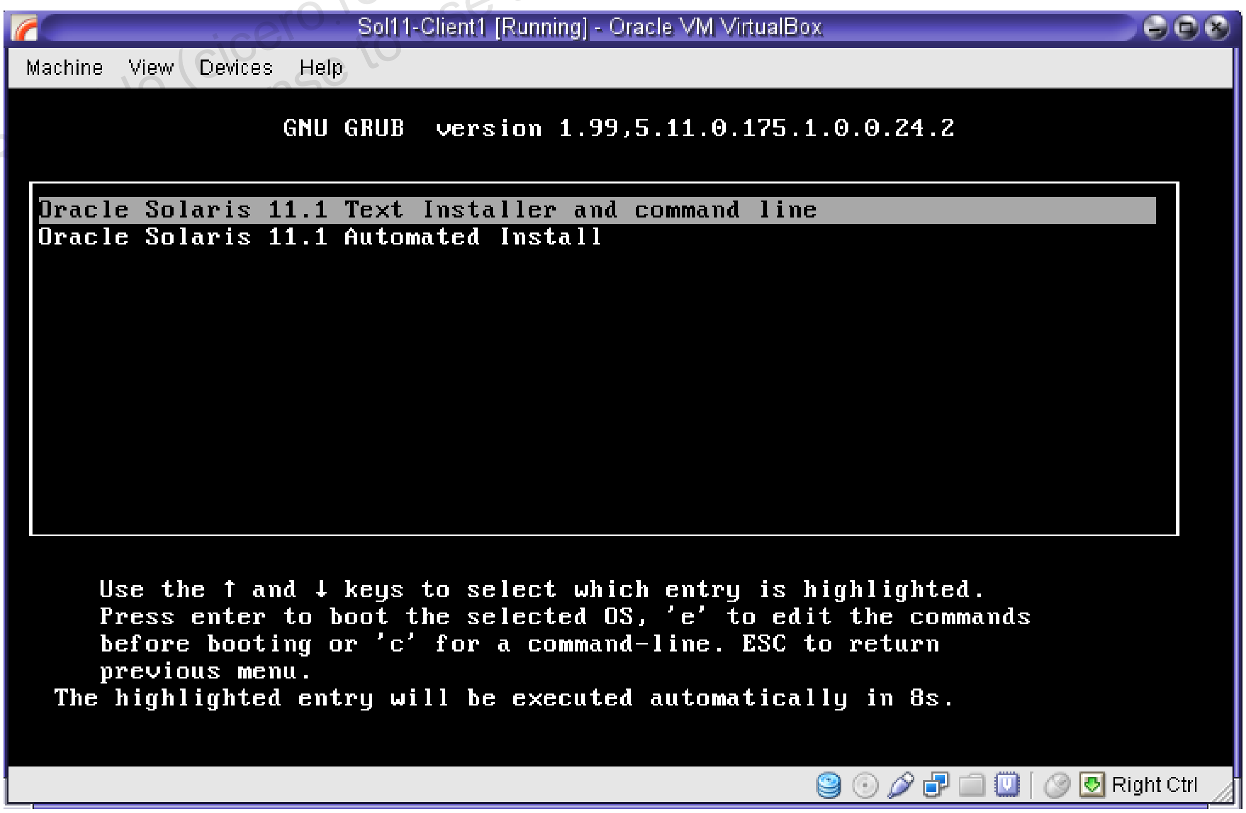
After you complete the AI server configuration, it is time to test your work by deploying the Oracle Solaris 11.1 operating system on a network client. You will use the VM named `Sol11-Client1` as the client host. After the client is imaged from the AI server, you will verify that the install was done completely and accurately.

Tasks

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Click the `Sol11-Client1` virtual machine icon.
3. Click the Start button. This will boot the `Sol11-Client1` virtual machine. If the AI server is configured correctly, you should see the OS installation begin.

   Note

   - If the `Sol11-Client1` virtual machine fails to boot with a "No bootable medium found" error, change the virtual machine adapter. To change the adapter type, open the Oracle VM VirtualBox Manager, select the `Sol11-Client1` virtual machine, and click Settings. In the Settings dialog box, select Network and click Advanced under Adapter 1. Select another adapter from the Adapter Type menu. Restart the `Sol11-Client1` virtual machine.
   - Perform the next step as soon as possible.
4. When the Sol11-Client1 system starts the GNU GRUB menu, select the `Oracle Solaris 11.1 Text Installer and command line` boot option.



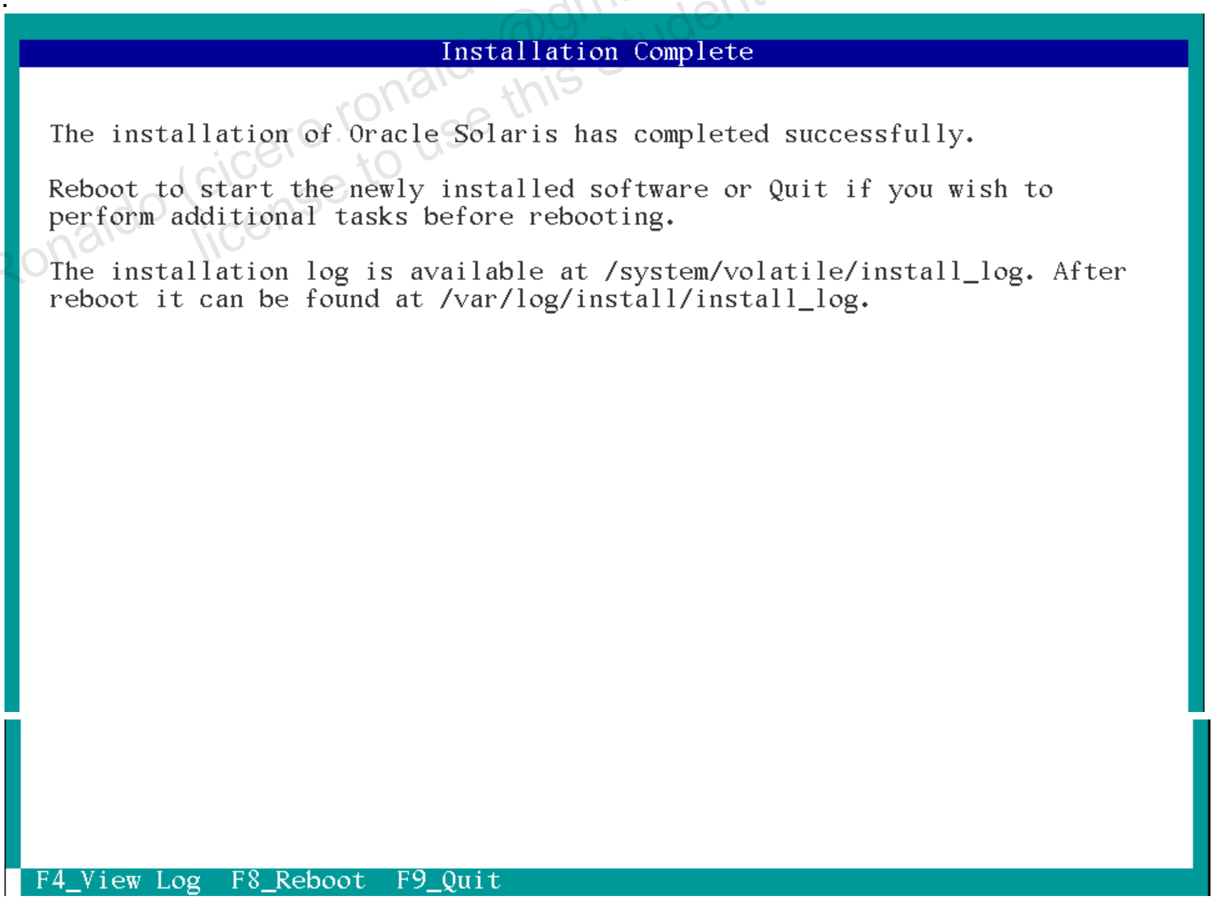
5. When the Oracle Solaris installation menu appears, type option `1` for "Install Oracle Solaris" and press Enter as instructed. During the OS installation process, use the following configuration data to complete the Text installation.

   Note: The Text installer program directs you to use the F2 key to move to the next step in the installation process.

   - **Installation menu**: `1. Install Oracle Solaris`
   - **Disks**: Local Disks
   - **Fdisk Partitions**: `Use the entire disk.`
   - **Computer name**: `s11-client1`
   - **Ethernet network configuration**: `Automatically`
   - **Time zone**: *Use your local region.*
   - **Date and time**: *Set to current date and time.*
   - **Root password**: `oracle1`
   - **User account**:
     - **Your real name**: `oracle`
     - **Username**: `oracle`
     - **Password**: `oracle1`

6. The installation should take around 10 minutes. You will see an "installation complete" message displayed.

.



7. After the installation has completed, reboot (F8) the `Sol11-Client1` virtual machine.

   Note: If the F8 key does not work, press the F9-Quit key. This returns you to the installation menu. From the menu, select option 5 to reboot.
8. After `Sol11-Client1` completes the initial boot and the `solaris-client1 console login` prompt appears, power down the virtual machine.

Practices for Lesson 4: Managing Business Application Data

Chapter 4

Practice Overview for Lesson 4

Practices Overview

Following the predeployment test plan, you now need to address the storage requirements of the business applications. You need to configure multiple ZFS storage pools. In this case, your organization is working with the Oracle CRM application. Then you need to create file systems for storing business application data. For file system backup and recovery, you will create snapshots and clones. Then you will need to explore ZFS property compression to minimize the storage space.

The default file system for Oracle Solaris 11 is ZFS. ZFS is the root file system on Oracle Solaris 11 that offers a superior experience in terms of manageability, scalability, and data integrity. The key areas explored in this practice are:

- Managing data redundancy with a ZFS mirrored pool
- Using ZFS snapshots for backup and recovery
- Using a ZFS clone
- Configuring ZFS compression
- Troubleshooting ZFS failures

Note: Your command output displays may be different than the displays in the practice, especially storage, process IDs, and other information.

Look at your checklist to see where you are.

√	Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
	Managing the Business Application Data
	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
	Managing Services and Service Properties
	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Practice 4-1: Managing Data Redundancy with a ZFS Mirrored Pool

Overview

In this practice, you test application data redundancy by using different scenarios. First you create a ZFS mirrored pool that contains one mirror. To minimize the chances of losing data, you distribute the data over two mirrors. At this time, to address a policy change, you reconfigure the pool to keep three copies of data, which requires you to create a three-way mirror.

Tasks

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the `oracle1` password. Assume administrator privileges.
3. Execute the `zpool list` command to display the ZFS pools that are currently configured in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.90G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

Currently, the only ZFS pool that is available is the root pool, which is needed to make the ZFS file system a root file system.

4. Use the `zpool status` command to determine the disks that are currently configured for the ZFS `rpool`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status rpool
  pool: rpool
 state: ONLINE
 scan: none requested
config:

      NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
      rpool       ONLINE       0     0     0
        c7t0d0s0  ONLINE       0     0     0

errors: No known data errors
```

This display shows that `rpool` is using the local disk `c7t0d0`.

So while creating new pools, leave this disk untouched.

5. Execute the `format` command to identify any additional disks configured in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# format

Searching for disks...done

AVAILABLE DISK SELECTIONS:
       0. c7t0d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 4174 alt 2 hd 255 sec 63>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@0,0
       1. c7t2d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@2,0
       2. c7t3d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@3,0
       3. c7t4d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@4,0
       4. c7t5d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
             /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@5,0
       5. c7t6d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       6. c7t7d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
             /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0
        7. c7t8d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       8. c7t9d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
             /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0

^C
```

The display tells you that disks `c7t2d0` to `c7t9d0` are available for use.

To cancel the `format` command, press Ctrl + C or Ctrl + D.

6. Create a mirrored ZFS pool named `oraclecrm` by using the disks `c7t2d0` and `c7t3d0`. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool create oraclecrm mirror c7t2d0 c7t3d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME        SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
oraclecrm  1008M   112K  1008M   0%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
rpool      31.8G  9.90G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

Here, you created a pool called `oraclecrm` with a mirror by using two free disks. The purpose of this pool is to store the Oracle business application Customer Relationship Management (CRM) components. Because your company required redundancy, you have created a mirror, meaning that you have an online copy of the CRM data. This online copy will come in handy in case one of the disks gets corrupted.

7. Add another mirror in the `oraclecrm` pool by using disks `c7t4d0` and `c7t5d0`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool add oraclecrm mirror c7t4d0 c7t5d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status oraclecrm
  pool: oraclecrm
 state: ONLINE
  scan: none requested
config:

        NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        oraclecrm   ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0  ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t2d0  ONLINE       -     -     -
            c7t3d0  ONLINE       -     -     -
          mirror-1  ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t4d0  ONLINE       -     -     -
            c7t5d0  ONLINE       -     -     -

errors: No known data errors
```

Your company is very concerned about losing data because of data or disk corruption. You are asked to spread the data over multiple disks to mitigate the risk of data loss. To satisfy this objective, you create another mirror by using two free disks. Now, the data is distributed over the two mirrors and the respective disks. This means that 50% of the data will be stored in the first mirror and 50% of the data in the second mirror. You will see a demonstration subsequently.

8. Check the capacity of both the mirrors by issuing the `zpool iostat -v oraclecrm` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool iostat -v oraclecrm
               capacity     operations    bandwidth
pool        alloc   free   read  write   read  write
----------  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
oraclecrm     94K  1.97G      0     10     53  11.7K
  mirror    71.5K  1008M      0      7     53  7.77K
    c7t2d0      -      -      0      7  5.18K  30.8K
    c7t3d0      -      -      0      7  5.13K  30.8K
  mirror    33.5K  1.02G      0      7      0  9.31K
    c7t4d0      -      -      0      9  12.3K  65.8K
    c7t5d0      -      -      0      9  12.3K  65.8K
----------  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
```

Here you see the two mirrors listed with their details. Note that the total free space in the pool, 1.97 GB, has been equally distributed between the two mirrors (1008 MB and 1.02 GB respectively). The `alloc` column shows the ZFS overhead.

9. Determine the mount point of the top-level file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list oraclecrm
NAME       USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm   94K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm
```

The mount point of the pool or the top-level file system of `oraclecrm` is `/oraclecrm`. This is the root of the pool; that is, all the file systems that are created will be within this mount point.

10. Create a 2 MB file by using the `mkfile` command. Check the file storage allocation for the mirrors by running the `zpool iostat` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# mkfile 2m /oraclecrm/crmindex
root@s11-server1:~# zpool iostat -v oraclecrm
              capacity     operations    bandwidth
pool        alloc   free   read  write   read  write
----------  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
oraclecrm   1.38M  1.97G      0      5     26  7.18K
  mirror     856K  1007M      0      3     26  4.67K
    c7t2d0      -      -      0      3  2.51K  15.8K
    c7t3d0      -      -      0      3  2.49K  15.8K
  mirror     558K  1007M      0      2      0  3.50K
    c7t4d0      -      -      0      2  3.47K  19.4K
    c7t5d0      -      -      0      2  3.47K  19.4K
----------  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----  -----
```

Note: Your display may show different numbers.

Your CRM analyst shared with you that a small file will be needed for storing the index of the CRM application. You create a 2 MB file called `crmindex` in the pool.

Note how this 2 MB worth of storage has been roughly divided between the two mirrors. This shows that all CRM data will be divided between the two mirrors.

Hint: In some cases, it may help to wait for some time before issuing the `zpool iostat` command to allow ZFS to complete writing to the mirrors.

11. Use the `zfs list oraclecrm` command to list the capacity summary for the `oraclecrm` pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list oraclecrm
NAME        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm  2.09M  1.94G  2.03M  /oraclecrm
```

Note the space used now at the top-level file system. This reflects the 2 MB of storage used by the `crmindex` file.

12. Use the `zpool destroy oraclecrm` command to delete the pool. Confirm the deletion by using the `zpool list` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool destroy oraclecrm
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list oraclecrm
cannot open 'oraclecrm': no such pool
```

Based on a review by the CRM analyst, there was a change in direction. It was agreed that you keep three copies of data and not distribute it over two separate mirror sets.

To address this objective, you delete the current data redundancy configuration and destroy the pool to create the new configuration.

13. Re-create the mirrored ZFS pool named `oraclecrm` by using the disks `c7t2d0` and `c7t3d0`. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool create oraclecrm mirror c7t2d0 c7t3d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME         SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
oraclecrm   1008M   126K  1008M   0%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
rpool       31.8G  9.90G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

Note: The purpose of the reconfiguration is to create a three-way mirror now and reuse the existing storage disks. This will also assist you in focusing on a cleaner setup, for instance, having one mirror.

14. Use the `zpool attach` command to add another disk to the mirror to make it a three-way mirror. Confirm this action by using the `zpool status` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool attach oraclecrm c7t2d0 c7t4d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status oraclecrm
  pool: oraclecrm
 state: ONLINE
  scan: resilvered 86.5K in 0h0m with 0 errors on Mon Dec 12
07:51:21 2012
config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        oraclecrm    ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t2d0   ONLINE       -     -     -
            c7t3d0   ONLINE       -     -     -
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       -     -     -

errors: No known data errors
```

Now this new configuration meets the objective of maintaining redundancy by keeping three copies of data on three individual disks. The application data can be created as shown earlier.

Notice that the `attach` command specifies an existing disk in the mirror and a free disk to be included in the mirror. The result is displayed by the `status` command. The `status` display also shows the resilvering action. The purpose of resilvering is to replicate data on the newly added disk.

15. Use the `zpool add` command to add a cache device to the mirror to allow the cache device to be used as local pool memory. Confirm this action by using the `zpool status` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool add oraclecrm cache c7t5d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status oraclecrm
  pool: oraclecrm
 state: ONLINE
  scan: resilvered 86.5K in 0h0m with 0 errors on Mon Dec 12
07:51:21 2012
config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        oraclecrm    ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t2d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
        cache
          c7t5d0     ONLINE       0     0     0

errors: No known data errors
```

This added device will serve as local memory for the pool to boost the input/output performance. Your business analyst had indicated that you may need to boost the I/O performance of the pool.

16. Your business analyst has now indicated that you do not need to boost pool performance because of the low volume of data. Use the `zpool remove` command to delete the cache device. Confirm this action by using the `zpool status` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool remove oraclecrm c7t5d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status oraclecrm
  pool: oraclecrm
 state: ONLINE
  scan: resilvered 86.5K in 0h0m with 0 errors on Mon Dec 12
07:51:21 2012
config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        oraclecrm    ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t2d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       0     0     0

errors: No known data errors
```

Note that the cache device does not appear in the display.

17. Use the `zpool destroy` command to delete the pool. Use the `zpool list` command to confirm the deletion.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME        SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
oraclecrm  1008M   126K  1008M   0%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
rpool      31.8G  9.90G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
root@s11-server1:~# zpool destroy oraclecrm
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.90G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

The purpose of destroying this pool is to conclude working with the mirrors. In the next practice, you will create a new pool with no mirrors to simplify working with ZFS backup and recovery functions. In addition, you will create a pool with no mirrors.

Practice 4-2: Using ZFS Snapshots for Backup and Recovery

Overview

According to your predeployment test plan, in this practice, you evaluate the data backup and recovery mechanism in Oracle Solaris 11.1. For backing up the data, you create snapshots, as well as use ZFS send/receive commands. The send/receive commands can be used to save the backed up data (snapshots) on the local or remote machine. You use rollback commands to recover the backed up or lost data.

Tasks

1. Verify that `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
3. Execute the `zpool list` command to display the ZFS pools that are currently configured in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.90G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

4. Run the `zpool create` command to create a pool with two top-level virtual devices. Check the pool information by using `zpool list` and `zpool status`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool create oraclecrm c7t3d0 c7t4d0
'oraclecrm' successfully created, but with no redundancy; failure
of one device will cause loss of the pool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME        SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
oraclecrm  1.97G   123K  1.97G   0%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
rpool      31.8G  9.90G  21.9G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

You now create a fresh pool by using two disks. This will give you experience in creating a simple pool without any mirror. Because your configuration is simple, your displays will be clean and easy to follow.

Confirm that the new pool has been created.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status oraclecrm
  pool: oraclecrm
 state: ONLINE
  scan: none requested
config:

        NAME       STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        oraclecrm  ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t3d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t4d0   ONLINE       0     0     0

errors: No known data errors
```

5. Create a file system named `oraclecrm/crmdata` with a mount point of `/crmdata`. Check the file system creation and the mount point by running the `zfs list` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create -o mountpoint=/crmdata \
oraclecrm/crmdata

root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm           137K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata    31K  1.94G    31K  /crmdata
```

You create a file system called `crmdata` in the `oraclecrm` pool. In this file system, you plan to store data in various CRM applications, such as Order Management, Marketing, and Customers.

Note that the mount point was specified to be `/crmdata` for `oraclecrm/crmdata` to be able to access the `crmdata` file system directly.

6. Create new ZFS file systems named `oraclecrm/crmdata/cust`, `oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg`, and `oraclecrm/crmdata/om`. List the descendants of the `oraclecrm` file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create oraclecrm/crmdata/cust
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create oraclecrm/crmdata/om
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                     USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                252K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata        127K  1.94G    34K  /crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust    31K  1.94G    31K  /crmdata/cust
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg    31K  1.94G    31K  /crmdata/mktg
oraclecrm/crmdata/om      31K  1.94G    31K  /crmdata/om
```

Note: These file systems are created to demonstrate individual file systems for each business application, as you will experience on the job.

Here, you create file systems to store data for the CRM application. The file systems are `cust`, `mktg`, and `om`. Note the `used` column and the `refer` column for the new file systems. The file systems are consuming an initial storage space of 31 KB.

7. Using the `tar` command, create a tar bundle that will serve as an example of the business application data. Copy `custarchive.tar` to each `crmdata` file system and the `/opt/ora/data` directory for future use. Note the amount of data used and referenced by these file systems.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tar cvf /crmdata/cust/custarchive.tar \
/usr/demo

...

a /usr/demo/expect/ 0K
a /usr/demo/expect/mkpasswd 6K
a /usr/demo/expect/ftp-rfc 1K
a /usr/demo/expect/rftp 9K
a /usr/demo/expect/weather 3K
…
…
…
root@s11-server1:~# cp /crmdata/cust/custarchive.tar \
/crmdata/mktg/custarchive.tar
root@s11-server1:~# cp /crmdata/cust/custarchive.tar \
/crmdata/om/custarchive.tar
```

You are saving the data in `/opt/ora/data` so that it will be available to you in the subsequent steps.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp /crmdata/cust/custarchive.tar \
/opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar
```

For training purposes, you are creating application data and placing it in the `crmdata` file systems.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                       USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                 2.88M  1.93G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata         2.75M  1.93G    35K  /crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust     929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/cust
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg     929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/mktg
oraclecrm/crmdata/om       929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/om
```

After placing application data in each file system, you see that all the file systems indicate 929 KB worth of storage. Your numbers may be different.

8. Create a recursive snapshot of `oraclecrm/crmdata` named `oraclecrm/crmdata@monday`. List the file systems below `oraclecrm`. Note the amount of space used and referenced by `oraclecrm/crmdata@monday`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs snapshot -r oraclecrm/crmdata@monday
```

Recursively create snapshots of every file system in `crmdata`. The purpose is to create a backup of each file system—that is, `cust`, `mktg`, and `om` data.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                      USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                3.06M  1.93G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata        2.75M  1.93G    34K  /crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust    929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/cust
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg    929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/mktg
oraclecrm/crmdata/om      929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/om
```

Now, when you try to display the children file systems of `oraclecrm` recursively, the snapshots are not displayed. Take a look at this.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool get listsnapshots oraclecrm
NAME       PROPERTY       VALUE      SOURCE
oraclecrm  listsnapshots  off        default
```

As displayed here, the `listsnapshots` property is off by default. You now enable it.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool set listsnapshots=on oraclecrm
```

Now, when you display the descendant file systems of `oraclecrm`, they are displayed. Note that there is one snapshot for each file system and they are all suffixed with `@monday`. As you can see, this is a very easy way to create multiple data backups and identify all of them with the same identifier.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                             USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                       2.90M  1.93G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata               2.75M  1.93G    35K  /crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@monday            0      -    35K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust           929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/cust
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@monday       0      -   929K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg           929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/mktg
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@monday       0      -   929K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/om             929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/om
oraclecrm/crmdata/om@monday         0      -   929K  -
```

Note that the newly created snapshots do not use any space (initially) but they do indicate 929 KB worth of storage, which includes the data that you placed in each file system. The snapshots initially do not take up any space because they are using the existing file system data pointers.

9. Create a file named `/crmdata/cust/colochoc`. Confirm that the file exists.

```
root@s11-server1:~# touch /crmdata/cust/colochoc
```

You create a file to store data on a customer `colochoc` (for Colorado Chocolate Company).

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls /crmdata/cust/colochoc
/crmdata/cust/colochoc
```

Success! You confirmed that it exists. Note that this file was created after taking a backup on Monday.

10. Create another recursive snapshot named `oraclecrm/crmdata@tuesday`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs snapshot -r oraclecrm/crmdata@tuesday
```

Note that the `colochoc` file will be included in the Tuesday snapshot but not in the Monday snapshot.

11. Attempt to roll back the `oraclecrm/crmdata` snapshot by using the `oraclecrm/crmdata@Monday` snapshot. What happens?

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs rollback oraclecrm/crmdata@monday
cannot rollback to 'oraclecrm/crmdata@monday': more recent
snapshots exist
use '-r' to force deletion of the following snapshots:
oraclecrm/crmdata@tuesday
```

Notice that more recent snapshots (`crmdata@tuesday`) exist; therefore, you cannot roll back to an earlier snapshot unless you use the `-r` option that deletes the more recent snapshots till the `crmdata@monday` snapshot becomes the most recent. Do not roll back yet.

Question: If the `oraclecrm/crmdata` snapshot is rolled back to the Monday snapshot, what data will be lost?

Answer: The file named `/crmdata/cust/colochoc` will be lost.

12. Delete the file named `/crmdata/cust/colochoc`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# rm /crmdata/cust/colochoc
```

Remove the customer `colochoc` to see if you can recover it.

13. List the descendant `oraclecrm` file systems. Roll back the `oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@tuesday` snapshot.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                           USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                     2.94M  1.93G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata             2.77M  1.93G    34K  /crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@monday          0      -    34K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata@tuesday         0      -    34K  -
```

```
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust            948K  1.93G   929K
/crmdata/cust
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@monday      19K      -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@tuesday      0       -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg            929K  1.93G   929K /crmdata/mktg
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@monday       0       -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@tuesday      0       -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/om              929K  1.93G   929K /crmdata/om
oraclecrm/crmdata/om@monday         0       -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/om@tuesday        0       -   929K -

root@s11-server1:~# zfs rollback oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@tuesday
```

You rolled back (recovered) to the `cust@tuesday` backup. Does it include the `colochoc` customer file? You will find out in the next step.

14. Confirm that `/crmdata/cust/colochoc` is restored.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls /crmdata/cust/colochoc
/crmdata/cust/colochoc
```

Yes, your customer `colochoc` is restored. Because the Tuesday backup was taken after you created this customer, it was in your `cust@tuesday` backup.

15. Create a directory named `/backup`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# mkdir /backup
```

Create a separate directory to store your Monday backups. Your company wants to save these backups offsite because this is the end of the quarter for your company.

16. Use the `zfs send` command to recursively send the `oraclecrm/crmdata@monday` snapshot. Save the copy in a file named `/backup/oraclecrm.crmdata.monday`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs send -Rv oraclecrm/crmdata@monday > \
/backup/oraclecrm.crmdata.monday
sending from @ to oraclecrm/crmdata@monday
sending from @ to oraclecrm/crmdata/om@monday
sending from @ to oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@monday
sending from @ to oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@monday
```

Now you have only one `/backup` directory, which contains all the Monday backups. This directory can be archived on tape or sent to another machine on the network. See how simple the command is. Use `-R` to send all the snapshots in `crmdata@monday`. The backed up snapshot naming convention has changed slightly to enable differentiation between the snapshots and the backed up data.

17. Use the `ls -lh` command to list the size of the file in `/backup`. Verify that it approximately matches the size of the space used by the `oraclecrm/crmdata` file systems.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls -lh /backup
total 1
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root        2.8M Dec 12 08:07
oraclecrm.crmdata.monday

root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /crmdata
NAME                USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm/crmdata  2.77M  1.93G    34K  /crmdata
```

Yes. It does match approximately.

18. Use the `zfs send` command to send the `oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@monday` snapshot to the `/backup` directory. Then list the size of the snapshot stream.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs send oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@monday > \
/backup/oraclecrm.crmdata.cust.monday

root@s11-server1:~# ls -lh /backup/oraclecrm.crmdata.cust.monday
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root        946K Oct 15 08:08
/backup/oraclecrm.crmdata.cust.monday

root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                            USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                      2.97M  1.93G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata              2.77M  1.93G    34K  /crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@monday           0      -    34K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata@tuesday          0      -    34K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust          929K  1.93G   929K
/crmdata/cust
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@monday    19K      -   929K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@tuesday    1K      -   929K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg          929K  1.93G   929K
/crmdata/mktg
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@monday      0      -   929K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@tuesday     0      -   929K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/om            929K  1.93G   929K  /crmdata/om
oraclecrm/crmdata/om@monday        0      -   929K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/om@tuesday       0      -   929K  -
```

As you can see, the Monday snapshot for the `cust` file system and its Monday backup file consume approximately the same amount of storage space.

19. Destroy the `oraclecrm/crmdata/cust` file system. Confirm whether it is deleted.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs destroy -r oraclecrm/crmdata/cust
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /crmdata/cust
/crmdata/cust: No such file or directory
```

You are destroying the `cust` file system so that you can test the recover (`receive`) function.

20. Use the `zfs receive` command to re-create the `oraclecrm/crmdata/cust` file system. Confirm the file system recovery by using the `zfs list` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs receive oraclecrm/crmdata/cust < \
/backup/oraclecrm.crmdata.cust.monday

root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /crmdata/cust
NAME                      USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust    929K  1.93G  929K  /crmdata/cust
```

This demonstrates that the recovery was successful.

21. Use the `zfs list` command to confirm the recovery of the full `/crmdata/cust` file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                              USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                        2.96M  1.93G    31K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata                2.78M  1.93G    35K  /crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@monday             0      -    34K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata@tuesday            0      -    34K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust            929K  1.93G   929K /crmdata/cust
oraclecrm/crmdata/cust@monday        0      -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg            929K  1.93G   929K /crmdata/mktg
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@monday        0      -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/mktg@tuesday       0      -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/om              929K  1.93G   929K /crmdata/om
oraclecrm/crmdata/om@monday          0      -   929K -
oraclecrm/crmdata/om@tuesday         0      -   929K -
```

This concludes the backup and recovery exercise. Keep the pool and destroy `crmdata` and its descendant file systems. You will create new file systems in the next practice. Confirm whether it has been destroyed.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs destroy -R oraclecrm/crmdata
```

Practice 4-3: Using a ZFS Clone

Overview

According to your predeployment test plan, in this practice, you continue to evaluate the data backup and recovery mechanism in Oracle Solaris 11.1. In Practice 4-2, you worked with the snapshots. In this practice, you work with the ZFS clone functionality. You have a test file system called `crmdata` and you want to modify it, but you want to keep a version of the unmodified file system.

Tasks

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
3. Execute the `zfs list` command to display the ZFS file systems that are currently configured in the `oraclecrm` pool. Create the `crmdata` file system by using the `zfs create` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm   116K  2.01G    31K  /oraclecrm

root@s11-server1:~# zfs create oraclecrm/crmdata
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm           158K  1.94G    32K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata    31K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata
```

4. Create a snapshot of the `crmdata` file system. Display the results.

Check whether the `listsnapshots` property is enabled so that the snapshots can be displayed.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool get listsnapshots oraclecrm
NAME        PROPERTY       VALUE      SOURCE
oraclecrm   listsnapshots  on         local

root@s11-server1:~# zfs snapshot oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r /oraclecrm
NAME                      USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                 159K  1.94G    32K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata          31K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11     0      -     31K  -
```

5. Create a clone of the snapshot and confirm the creation.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs clone oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11 \
oraclecrm/crmdata2
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r /oraclecrm
NAME                        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                   202K  1.94G    33K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata            31K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11       0      -    31K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata2           18K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata2
```

Note that the snapshot is not mounted and the clone is. Remember from the previous exercise that the snapshots (and clones for that matter) do not take up any storage initially. Identify the snapshot and the clone in this display.

6. Compare the attributes of the snapshot and the clone.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls -ld /oraclecrm/crmdata2
drwxr-xr-x   2 root     root         2 Dec 13 08:14
/oraclecrm/crmdata2
root@s11-server1:~# ls -ld /oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11
/oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11: No such file or directory
root@s11-server1:~# cd /oraclecrm/crmdata2
root@s11-server1:/oraclecrm/crmdata2# touch newcust
root@s11-server1:/oraclecrm/crmdata2# ls
newcust
```

The preceding commands demonstrate the major difference between the snapshot and the clone. The snapshot is not available and the clone is available, as well as modifiable.

7. Assuming that you have made the modifications in the clone, look at the space usage of the clone.

```
root@s11-server1:/oraclecrm/crmdata2# cd
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r /oraclecrm
NAME                        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                   203K  1.94G    33K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata            31K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11       0      -    31K  -
oraclecrm/crmdata2           19K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata2
```

Note the `used` column for the clone. The space utilization has gone up when compared to the same column in step 5. Because you created a file in the clone, it will use more storage to keep track of the new file.

8. Now, you can proceed with replacing the main file system with the newly modified clone.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs promote oraclecrm/crmdata2
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r /oraclecrm
NAME                       USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                  206K  1.94G    33K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata             0  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata2          50K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata2
oraclecrm/crmdata2@Dec11    19K      -    31K  -
```

If you do the math, the used space of the clone `crmdata2` now reflects the total of the main file system `crmdata` and the clone, that is, 31 KB + 19 KB = 50 KB. This means that the new file `newcust` in the clone has been added to `crmdata`.

9. Rename the main file system as `crmdatabackup` and rename the clone to replace the main file system. Display the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs rename oraclecrm/crmdata \
oraclecrm/crmdatabackup
root@s11-server1:~# zfs rename oraclecrm/crmdata2 oraclecrm/crmdata
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME                      USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm                 374K  1.94G    33K  /oraclecrm
oraclecrm/crmdata          50K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdata
oraclecrm/crmdata@Dec11    19K      -    31K  -
oraclecrm/crmdatabackup      0  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm/crmdatabackup
```

Now you have the datasets that reflect the modified picture. If you need to go back to the previous version of `crmdata`, it is saved as `crmdatabackup`.

This method is useful when you want to maintain the previous version of the data or overlay the production file system with modified data.

10. Destroy `oraclecrm` by using the `zpool destroy` command. Confirm the action.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool destroy oraclecrm
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool  31.8G 9.90G  21.8G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

You will start afresh in the next practice.

Practice 4-4: Configuring ZFS Properties

Overview

According to your predeployment test plan, in this practice, you check to see how share, quotas, and reservation and data compression techniques work in Oracle Solaris 11.1.

While working with the quota and reservation properties, you create a new user, make the home directory a ZFS file system, and set the properties on the user's file system.

Task 1: Configuring Quota and Reservation Properties

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume primary administrator privileges.
3. Run the `zpool list` command to check the pools available. Use `zfs list` to display the file systems available.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.90G  21.8G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list
NAME                         USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool                       9.97G  21.3G    39K  /rpool
rpool/ROOT                  1.89G  21.3G    31K  legacy
rpool/ROOT/solaris          1.89G  21.3G  1.61G  /
rpool/ROOT/solaris/var       232M  21.3G  87.3M  /var
rpool/dump                  1.03G  21.3G  1.00G  -
rpool/export                6.01G  21.3G    33K  /export
rpool/export/IPS            5.74G  21.3G  5.74G  /export/IPS
rpool/export/home            211K  21.3G    37K  /export/home
rpool/swap                  1.03G  21.3G    1.00G  -
```

Note that the `/export/home` file system is designed to store the file systems that become the home directories for users.

4. Now you can create the new user `gail` and use the ZFS file system as Gail's home directory.

```
root@s11-server1:~# useradd -u 60015 -g 10 -d /export/home/gail \
-m gail
80 blocks
root@s11-server1:~# ls -ld /export/home/gail
drwxr-xr-x   2 gail     staff          7 Dec 13 08:22
/export/home/gail
```

5. Set a storage quota of 2 MB for Gail.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set quota=2M rpool/export/home/gail
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get quota rpool/export/home/gail
NAME                    PROPERTY  VALUE  SOURCE
```

```
rpool/export/home/gail  quota     2M     local
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /export/home/gail
NAME                    USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/export/home/gail   35K  1.97M    35K  /export/home/gail
root@s11-server1:~# df -h /export/home/gail
Filesystem             Size  Used Available Capacity  Mounted on
rpool/export/home/gail
                       2.0M   35K     2.0M       2%  /export/home/gail
```

Note the available space for Gail as displayed by multiple commands.

6. Switch to Gail's account and create a few files to test the storage limit.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - gail
Oracle Corporation      SunOS 5.11     11.1      November 2012
gail@s11-server1:~$ mkfile 1m /export/home/gail/crmindex
gail@s11-server1:~$ ls -l /export/home/gail/crmindex
-rw-------   1 gail     staff    1048576 Dec 13 08:24
/export/home/gail/crmindex
```

You needed to create a 1-MB file to store the CRM index information. Because Gail is within her storage quota, there are no issues.

7. Create more files in Gail's account to test the storage limit.

```
gail@s11-server1:~$ mkfile 2m /export/home/gail/crmdoc
/export/home/gail/crmdoc: initialized 917504 of 2097152 bytes:
Disc quota exceeded
```

Here you have only 1 MB left in the quota. The system allocated the requested amount but initialized only enough storage to meet the quota. It could spell potential problems if you use up all the allocated space.

```
gail@s11-server1:~$ ls -l /export/home/gail
total 4112
-rw-------   1 gail     staff    2097152 Dec 13 08:24 crmdoc
-rw-------   1 gail     staff    1048576 Dec 13 08:24 crmindex
-rw-r--r--   1 gail     staff        165 Dec 13 08:22 local.cshrc
-rw-r--r--   1 gail     staff        170 Dec 13 08:22 local.login
-rw-r--r--   1 gail     staff        130 Dec 13 08:22
local.profile
gail@s11-server1:~$ mkfile 2m /export/home/gail/crmreq
Could not open /export/home/gail/crmreq: Disc quota exceeded
```

This is as expected.

```
gail@s11-server1:~$ ls -l /export/home/gail
total 4112
```

```
-rw-------   1 gail     staff    2097152 Dec 13 08:24 crmdoc
-rw-------   1 gail     staff    1048576 Dec 13 08:24 crmindex
-rw-r--r--   1 gail     staff        165 Dec 13 08:22 local.cshrc
-rw-r--r--   1 gail     staff        170 Dec 13 08:22 local.login
-rw-r--r--   1 gail     staff        130 Dec 13 08:22
local.profile
```

8. Gail is now working on a different project and needs to reserve 10 MB of storage. So now, as the administrator, you want to make a storage reservation for Gail.

```
gail@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set reservation=10M \
rpool/export/home/gail
cannot set property for 'rpool/export/home/gail': size is greater
than available space
```

From the preceding steps, you know that Gail's available space has been used up and the quota limit is still in force; therefore, you cannot make the storage reservation.

9. Remove the quota and the data files, and check the space utilization of the file systems.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set quota=none rpool/export/home/gail
```

This will clear the quota property. Gail can create datasets of any size that are not to exceed the total pool storage available.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get quota rpool/export/home/gail
NAME                    PROPERTY  VALUE  SOURCE
rpool/export/home/gail  quota     none   local
root@s11-server1:~# rm /export/home/gail/*
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /export/home/gail
NAME                     USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/export/home/gail  2.04M  21.3G  2.04M  /export/home/gail
```

The `used` column shows the current space usage since the files were deleted.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /export/home
NAME               USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/export/home  246K  21.3G    38K  /export/home
```

Note that the `used` column currently shows 246 KB of storage used.

10. Reserve 10 MB of storage for Gail.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set reservation=10M \
rpool/export/home/gail
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get reservation rpool/export/home/gail
NAME                    PROPERTY     VALUE   SOURCE
```

```
rpool/export/home/gail  reservation  10M     local

Confirmed!
```

11. Now check the file systems.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /export/home/gail
NAME                     USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/export/home/gail  33.5K  21.3G  33.5K  /export/home/gail

Note that the reserved space has not been added to Gail's home directory.

root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /export/home
NAME                USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/export/home  10.2M  21.3G    38K  /export/home

However, note that space has been reserved in /export/home, which is the parent
dataset. This demonstrates that reservations are considered in the used disk space
calculation of the parent dataset.
```

Task 2: Configuring the Share Property

In this task, you share Gail's home directory. In this situation, an assumption is made that her home directory contains an application documentation that is required by other users in other locations on the network. In the real world, you may have another application directory for this purpose that may need to be shared.

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it at this time. Also start the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
3. Run the `zpool list` command to check the pools that are available. Use `zfs list` to display the file systems that are available. Create a file in Gail's directory.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list
NAME                        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool                      9.97G  21.3G    39K  /rpool
rpool/ROOT                 1.89G  21.3G    31K  legacy
rpool/ROOT/solaris         1.89G  21.3G  1.61G  /
rpool/ROOT/solaris/var      232M  21.3G  87.3M  /var
rpool/dump                 1.03G  21.3G  1.00G  -
rpool/export               6.02G  21.3G   274M  /export
rpool/export/IPS           5.74G  21.3G  5.74G  /export/IPS
rpool/export/home          10.2M  21.3G    38K  /export/home
rpool/export/home/gail     33.5K  21.3G  33.5K  /export/home/gail
rpool/export/home/jholt      35K  21.3G    35K  /export/home/jholt
rpool/export/home/jmoose     35K  21.3G    35K  /export/home/jmoose
rpool/export/home/oracle     34K  21.3G    34K  /export/home/oracle
```

```
rpool/export/home/panna      35K  21.3G    35K  /export/home/panna
rpool/export/home/sstudent  35K  21.3G    35K  /export/home/sstudent
rpool/swap                1.03G  21.3G   1.00G  -

root@s11-server1:~# cd /export/home/gail
root@s11-server1:/export/home/gail# touch crmreq
```

In Gail's home directory, you created the `crmreq` file.

4. Using the `chmod` command, change the permissions on Gail's home directory.

```
root@s11-server1:/export/home/gail# chmod 777 /export/home/gail
root@s11-server1:/export/home/gail# ls -ld /export/home/gail
drwxrwxrwx   2 gail     staff          4 Dec 13 08:27 /export/home/gail
```

You are setting these permissions only for training purposes. In the real world, you will use appropriate permissions as required by your business environment and the policies.

5. Share her home directory with other users on the network.

```
root@s11-server1:/export/home/gail# zfs set share=name=gail,\
path=/export/home/gail,prot=nfs rpool/export/home/gail
name=gail,path=/export/home/gail,prot=nfs
root@s11-server1:/export/home/gail# zfs set sharenfs=on \
rpool/export/home/gail
```

Enable the `share` property on `/export/home/gail`.

```
root@s11-server1:/export/home/gail# share
gail     /export/home/gail        nfs     sec=sys,rw
export_home_gail       /export/home/gail       nfs     sec=sys,rw
```

This confirms that the file system is being shared.

```
root@s11-serv1:/export/home/gail# svcs -a | grep nfs
disabled       Dec_13   svc:/network/nfs/cbd:default
disabled       Dec_13   svc:/network/nfs/client:default
online         Dec_13   svc:/network/nfs/fedfs-client:default
online          8:31:55 svc:/network/nfs/status:default
online          8:31:56 svc:/network/nfs/rquota:default
online          8:31:56 svc:/network/nfs/mapid:default
online          8:31:56 svc:/network/nfs/nlockmgr:default
online          8:32:00 svc:/network/nfs/server:default
```

The system has brought the NFS server online. It is always a good idea to check this.

Note: You may need to manually share the NFS file system if it fails to do so automatically.

If the NFS server is not enabled, issue this command:

```
# share -F nfs -o rw /export/home/gail
```

6. Log in to the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Open a terminal window and assume administrator privileges. Check if you can see the share.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# dfshares s11-server1
RESOURCE                             SERVER ACCESS    TRANSPORT
s11-server1:/export/home/gail    s11-server1  -         -
s11-server1:/export/share        s11-server1  -         -
. . .
```

   Yes, you can see the resource shared by the `s11-server1` server.

7. Create the mount point and mount the shared resource.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# mkdir /gaildir
root@s11-desktop:~# mount -f nfs s11-server1:/export/home/gail /gaildir
root@s11-desktop:~# cd /gaildir
root@s11-desktop:/gaildir# ls
crmreq
```

   You can see the shared file `crmreq` in Gail's home directory.

```
root@s11-desktop:/gaildir# touch crmdata
root@s11-desktop:/gaildir# ls
crmdata  crmreq
```

   You can create another file in the shared directory, meaning you have read/write access.

8. Because you have finished working with Gail's directory, you can unmount it.

```
root@s11-desktop:/gaildir# cd
root@s11-desktop:~# umount /gaildir
```

   If you are unable to mount the `/gaildir directory`, use `-f` to unmount it.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# umount -f /gaildir
```

9. Return to the `s11-server1` VM and stop sharing the directory.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set sharenfs=off rpool/export/home/gail
```

Task 3: Configuring ZFS Compression

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume primary administrator privileges.

3. Using the command `zpool`, create the `oraclecrm` pool using disks `c7t2d0` and `c7t3d0`. Run the `zfs list` command to list the space currently used by `oraclecrm`. Make a note of the value indicated.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.90G  21.8G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
root@s11-server1:~# zpool create oraclecrm c7t2d0 c7t3d0
'oraclecrm' successfully created, but with no redundancy; failure
of one device will cause loss of the pool
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r oraclecrm
NAME        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm    88K  1.94G    31K  /oraclecrm
```

Currently, you have the pool available to you with no other file systems, which you confirm by using the `-r` option.

4. Use the `ls` command with the `-lh` options to list the size of the archive file in `/opt/ora/data`. Make a note of it.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls -lh /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar
-rw-r—r--   1 root     root        786K Dec 13 09:09
/opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar
```

The new file takes up approximately 786 KB.

5. Create a directory named `/oraclecrm/cmp` to hold the files that you will copy to the file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# mkdir /oraclecrm/cmp
```

This directory will be used to store the compressed customer data.

6. Use the `zfs get` command to display the current settings of the `compression` and `compressratio` properties for `oraclecrm`. Verify that compression is off and the compression ratio is 1.00x.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get compression,compressratio oraclecrm
NAME        PROPERTY       VALUE     SOURCE
oraclecrm   compression    off       default
oraclecrm   compressratio  1.00x     -
```

The `compression` property is set to off by default. Because compression is off, the `compressratio` property is set to `1.00x`. A ratio of 1-to-1 for data means no compression.

7. Copy /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar to /oraclecrm/cmp/custarchive.tar. List the file to display its size.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar \
/oraclecrm/cmp/custarchive.tar
root@s11-server1:~# ls -lh /oraclecrm/cmp
total 1
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root    786K Dec 13 09:47 custarchive.tar
```

After copying the file into the pool, it consumes approximately the same space.

8. Use the zfs list command to list the space used by oraclecrm. Does the space used match the size of /oraclecrm/cmp/custarchive.tar?

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list oraclecrm
NAME         USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm    992K  1.94G   931K  /oraclecrm
```

Yes, the zfs list command also confirms the same space consumption.

9. Use zfs get to verify that the compression ratio for oraclecrm is still 1.00x.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get compressratio oraclecrm
NAME        PROPERTY       VALUE  SOURCE
oraclecrm   compressratio  1.00x  -
```

Yes, compressratio is still unchanged.

10. Set the compression property for oraclecrm to gzip and verify that the new value is set.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set compression=gzip oraclecrm
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get compression oraclecrm
NAME        PROPERTY     VALUE     SOURCE
oraclecrm   compression  gzip      local
```

You set the compression property on oraclecrm file system to gzip. Now notice the space usage of the files, which get stored in the oraclecrm file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set compression=ggg oraclecrm
cannot set property for 'oraclecrm': 'compression' must be one of
'on | off | lzjb | gzip | gzip-[1-9] | zle'
```

The purpose of this command is to demonstrate the different types of compression property values that are available. You intentionally specify ggg so that you can see valid property values.

Optionally, you can experiment with these compression types and compare the compression ratio.

11. Copy /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar to /oraclecrm/cmp/archive2.tar. List all the files in /oraclecrm/cmp to display their sizes. Are the files in /oraclecrm/cmp the same size?

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar \
/oraclecrm/cmp/archive2.tar
root@s11-server1:~# ls -lh /oraclecrm/cmp
total 3529
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root         786K Dec 13 09:11 archive2.tar
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root         786K Dec 13 09:09 custarchive.tar
```

Yes, they are equal as displayed by the ls command.

12. Use the zfs list command to list the space used by oraclecrm. Does the space used match the sum of the size of the two files? No, the output reports a smaller size than the sum of the two files.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list oraclecrm
NAME         USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm  1.12M  1.94G  1.06M  /oraclecrm
```

With reference to the preceding step, the sum of the space utilized by the two files would be 1572 KB as against 1.12 MB displayed by the zfs list command.

13. Use the zfs get command to display the current setting of the compressratio property for oraclecrm. Notice that compressratio is now 1.55x.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get compressratio oraclecrm
NAME        PROPERTY       VALUE  SOURCE
oraclecrm   compressratio  1.68x  -
```

The ratio is 1.68x, which means that data is being compressed at a ratio of 1.68-1 (approximately 59%).

14. Copy /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar to /oraclecrm/cmp/archive3.tar. List all the files in /oraclecrm/cmp to display their sizes. Are the files in /oraclecrm/cmp the same size?

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar \
/oraclecrm/cmp/archive3.tar
root@s11-server1:~# ls -lh /oraclecrm/cmp
total 2405
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root         786K Dec 13 09:11 archive2.tar
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root         786K Dec 13 09:12 archive3.tar
-rw-r--r--   1 root     root         786K Dec 13 09:09 custarchive.tar
```

Yes, they are.

15. Use the du -h command to display the space used by the files in /oraclecrm/cmp. How does the amount of space used by these files compare?

```
root@s11-server1:~# du -h /oraclecrm/cmp/*
 152K   /oraclecrm/cmp/archive2.tar
 152K   /oraclecrm/cmp/archive3.tar
```

```
 898K   /oraclecrm/cmp/custarchive.tar
```

The `custarchive.tar` file uses the same space as the `ls -lh` command indicates. The other two files show a percentage of the original size of the files. The `custarchive.tar` file was created in the `cmp` file system before enabling compression. This was done intentionally, so that you can see the difference between space usage by compressed and uncompressed files.

16. Use the `zfs get` command to display the current value of the `compressratio` property for `oraclecrm`. What is the current compression ratio? How has it changed and why?

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get compressratio oraclecrm
NAME        PROPERTY       VALUE  SOURCE
oraclecrm   compressratio  2.20x  -
```

The compression ratio is now `2.20x`. It has increased with the addition of the second compressed file. A larger portion of the data in the pool is now being compressed. This demonstrates that as you add more data files in a ZFS file system with compression enabled, compression further reduces space utilization.

17. Remove the `/oraclecrm/cmp/custarchive.tar` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# rm /oraclecrm/cmp/custarchive.tar
```

18. Use the `zfs get` command to display the current value of the `compressratio` property for `oraclecrm`. What is the current compression ratio? How has it changed and why?

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs get compressratio oraclecrm
NAME        PROPERTY       VALUE  SOURCE
oraclecrm   compressratio  5.41x  -
```

The compression ratio has increased again with the removal of the uncompressed file.

19. Use the `zfs list` command to list the space used by `oraclecrm` and `du -h` to list the space used by the remaining two files in `/oraclecrm/cmp`. Does the `refer` value reported by `zfs list` reflect the sum of the space used by the two files in `/oraclecrm/cmp`?

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list oraclecrm
NAME        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
oraclecrm   398K  1.94G   336K  /oraclecrm

root@s11-server1:~# du -h /oraclecrm/cmp/*
 152K   /oraclecrm/cmp/archive2.tar
 152K   /oraclecrm/cmp/archive3.tar
```

Yes, the two values are correlated.

20. Using the `zpool destroy` command, delete the `oraclecrm` pool. Confirm the action.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool destroy oraclecrm

root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.90G  21.8G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

You have destroyed the pool because you have finished using it.

Practice 4-5: Troubleshooting ZFS Failures

Overview

In this practice, you will work with ZFS device and data problems. For demonstration purposes, you will simulate the problems and correct the problems. This practice includes the following activities:

- Troubleshooting ZFS device issues
- Troubleshooting ZFS data errors

Task 1: Troubleshooting ZFS Device Issues

This task includes the following activities:

- Creating ZFS components
- Configuring `syslog` for Fault Manager Daemon (FMD) messages
- Troubleshooting a ZFS device error in a `raidz` pool

Task 1A: Creating the ZFS Components

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume primary administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

3. Using the `zpool` commands, create a `raidz` pool with three virtual devices. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# format
Searching for disks...done

AVAILABLE DISK SELECTIONS:
       0. c7t0d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 4174 alt 2 hd 255 sec 63>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@0,0
       1. c7t2d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@2,0
       2. c7t3d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@3,0
       3. c7t4d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@4,0
       4. c7t5d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@5,0
       5. c7t6d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       6. c7t7d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0
       7. c7t8d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
```

```
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       8. c7t9d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0
Specify disk (enter its number): ^C

root@s11-server1:~# zpool create assetpool raidz c7t3d0 c7t4d0 c7t5d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME        SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
assetpool  2.95G   241K  2.95G   0%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
rpool      31.8G  9.90G  21.8G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -

root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: none requested
config:

      NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
      assetpool    ONLINE       0     0     0
        raidz1-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t3d0   ONLINE       -     -     -
          c7t4d0   ONLINE       -     -     -
          c7t5d0   ONLINE       -     -     -

errors: No known data errors
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status -x
all pools are healthy
```

4. Use the `zfs` command to create an `inventory` file system in your `assetpool`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create assetpool/inventory
root@s11-server1:~# zfs mount | grep inventory
assetpool/inventory             /assetpool/inventory
root@s11-server1:~# ls -lh /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar
-rw-r—r--   1 root     root       786K Dec 13  09:09
/opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar
```

For training purposes, you use the `custarchive.tar` file to simulate business application files.

5. Use the `cp` command to copy the `custarchive` file into the `inventory` file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp /opt/ora/data/custarchive.tar \
 /assetpool/inventory/custarchive.tar
```

Task 1B: Configuring `syslog` for FMD Messages

1. Create a new file named `/var/adm/messages.fmd` for Fault Management Daemon to log the device-related messages.

```
root@s11-server1:~# touch /var/adm/messages.fmd
```

2. Back up the current `/etc/syslog.conf` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp /etc/syslog.conf /etc/syslog.conf.orig
```

3. Edit the `/etc/syslog.conf` file. Enter a new line below the existing line as shown.

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi /etc/syslog.conf
```

Existing line:

```
*.err;kern.debug;daemon.notice;mail.crit    /var/adm/messages
```

New line:

```
daemon.err                                  /var/adm/messages.fmd
```

Make it look similar to the following:

```
*.err;kern.debug;daemon.notice;mail.crit    /var/adm/messages
daemon.err                                  /var/adm/messages.fmd
```

Remember to separate the columns by using tabs.

What is the purpose of this entry in `syslog`? *This step will ensure that all ZFS device-related messages are logged in a separate file for this practice*.
(Normally, FMD writes hardware-related messages to the `/var/adm/messages` file.)

4. Use the `svcadm` command to refresh the `syslog` service for the new configuration to take effect.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm refresh system-log
```

Task 1C: Troubleshooting a ZFS Device Error in a `raid-z` Pool

1. Verify that you can read the contents of your data file `/assetpool/inventory/custarchive.tar`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tar tvf /assetpool/inventory/custarchive.tar
…
-r--r--r-- root/bin         0 Oct 20 22:18 usr/share/common-
lisp/
-r--r--r-- root/bin         0 Oct 20 22:18 usr/share/common-
lisp/source/
-r--r--r-- root/bin         0 Oct 20 22:27 usr/share/common-
lisp/source/gpg
-error/
```

```
-r--r--r-- root/bin       2206 Oct 20 09:01 usr/share/common-
lisp/source/gpg
-error/gpg-error-package.lisp
…
…
…
```

Can you access your data in the inventory file system? *Yes*

Note that the contents are irrelevant in this situation. The output of the file that you are viewing was created to simulate a business application data file and is only for training purposes.

2. Display the status of `assetpool` and verify that all devices are online.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: none requested
config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool    ONLINE       0     0     0
          raidz1-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0   ONLINE       -     -     -
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       -     -     -
            c7t5d0   ONLINE       -     -     -

errors: No known data errors
```

3. Using the `prtvtoc` command, display the current `vtoc` configuration of the `c7t5d0` disk.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# prtvtoc /dev/rdsk/c7t5d0
* /dev/rdsk/c7t5d0 partition map
*
* Dimensions:
*     512 bytes/sector
* 2097152 sectors
* 2097085 accessible sectors
*
* Flags:
*   1: unmountable
*  10: read-only
*
* Unallocated space:
*     First     Sector    Last
*     Sector     Count    Sector
```

```
*          34       222       255
*
*                          First     Sector    Last
* Partition  Tag  Flags    Sector     Count    Sector  Mount
Directory
       0      4    00         256   2080479   2080734
       8     11    00    2080735     16384   2097118
```

Note that you will be working with the highlighted slice 0 entry.

4. Save vtoc and cause the c7t5d0 disk to appear as failed. Use the /var/tmp/vtoc5 file as indicated to make slice 0 disappear.

```
root@s11-server1:~# prtvtoc /dev/rdsk/c7t5d0 > /var/tmp/vtoc5.orig
root@s11-server1:~# prtvtoc /dev/rdsk/c7t5d0 > /var/tmp/vtoc5
```

Note that you have saved a copy of c7t5d0 vtoc to two files because you will modify the /var/tmp/vtoc5 file and keep /var/tmp/vtoc5.orig as a copy of your original vtoc configuration.

Delete the slice 0 configuration from vtoc (the highlighted entry in the preceding step).

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi /var/tmp/vtoc5
```

Verify that the slice 0 line is deleted.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tail /var/tmp/vtoc5
*  10: read-only
*
* Unallocated space:
*     First     Sector    Last
*     Sector     Count    Sector
*          34       222       255
*
*                          First     Sector    Last
* Partition  Tag  Flags    Sector     Count    Sector  Mount
Directory
       8     11    00    2158559     16384   2174942
```

Is the slice 0 line available? *No, it has been deleted.*

What is the purpose of deleting this entry? *So that you can simulate a device problem*
The system will not be able to use this disk because its vtoc configuration is not available, thus affecting the ZFS pool.

5. Use the `fmthard` command to copy the modified `vtoc` to the disk.

```
root@s11-server1:~# fmthard -s /var/tmp/vtoc5 /dev/rdsk/c7t5d0s0
fmthard:  New volume table of contents now in place.
```

What is the purpose of this command? *To overlay the current `c7t5d0` `vtoc`*

6. Repeat steps 1 and 2 in the current task.

   Question: Why is the system showing no errors with disk `c7t5d0`, whereas its `vtoc` is corrupted?

   Answer: *Because the system is working with `vtoc` and its configuration from memory. You need to recycle the disk.*

7. Using the `zpool` command, take the disk offline and attempt to put it back online. Display the status of the pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool offline assetpool c7t5d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool online assetpool c7t5d0
warning: device 'c7t5d0' onlined, but remains in faulted state
use 'zpool clear' to restore a faulted device
root@s11-server1:~#

root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: DEGRADED
status: One or more devices are unavailable in response to persistent
        errors. Sufficient replicas exist for the pool to continue
        functioning   in a degraded state.
action: Determine if the device needs to be replaced, and clear the
        errors using 'zpool clear' or 'fmadm repaired', or replace the
        device with 'zpool replace'.
        Run 'zpool status -v' to see device specific details.
config:

      NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
      assetpool   DEGRADED     0     0     0
        raidz1-0  DEGRADED     0     0     0
          c7t3d0  ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t4d0  ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t5d0  UNAVAIL      0     0     0
errors: No known data errors
```

In your `raidz` pool, is disk `c7t5d0` available? *No, it cannot be opened.*
Note that the message displayed on your system may be different.

8. Using the `more` command, view the contents of your log file `/var/adm/messages.fmd`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# more /var/adm/messages.fmd
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 fmd: [ID 377184 daemon.error] SUNW-
MSG-ID: ZFS-8000-LR, TYPE: Fault, VER: 1, SEVERITY: Major
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 EVENT-TIME: Wed Dec 12 05:17:08 UTC
2012
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 PLATFORM: VirtualBox, CSN: 0,
HOSTNAME: s11-server1
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 SOURCE: zfs-diagnosis, REV: 1.0
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 EVENT-ID: fbe8ab80-a530-e5a3-bc1a-
a8709067f39e
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 DESC: ZFS device
'id1,sd@SATA_____VBOX_HARDDISK____VBc5298f81-7a69e7ac/a' in pool
'assetpool' failed to
open.
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 AUTO-RESPONSE: An attempt will be
made to activate a hot spare if available.
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 IMPACT: Fault tolerance of the pool
may be compromised.
Dec 12 05:17:08 s11-server1 REC-ACTION: Use 'fmadm faulty' to
provide a more detailed view of this event. Run 'zpool status -
lx' for
 more information. Please refer to the associated reference
document at http://support.oracle.com/msg/ZFS-8000-LR for the
latest ser
vice procedures and policies regarding this diagnosis.
root@s11-server1:~#
```

The FMD facility logged the device corruption messages in the configured file.

9. Using the `zpool` command, replace the faulty disk with an available disk. Clear any pool-level errors logged by ZFS. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool replace assetpool c7t5d0 c7t2d0
```

Which disk is replacing which disk? *You are replacing `c7t5d0` with `c7t2d0`.*

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool clear assetpool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: resilvered 524K in 0h0m with 0 errors on Wed Dec 14
09:37:38 2012
config:

        NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool   ONLINE       0     0     0
```

```
        raidz1-0  ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t3d0  ONLINE       -     -     -
          c7t4d0  ONLINE       -     -     -
          c7t2d0  ONLINE       -     -     -

errors: No known data errors
```

Has the faulty disk been replaced? *Yes*

Is the pool healthy? *Yes*

10. Using the `scrub` command, have ZFS streamline the data in the `raidz` pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool scrub assetpool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
 scan: scrub repaired 0 in 0h0m with 0 errors on Wed Dec 14
18:05:55 2012
config:

      NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
      assetpool   ONLINE       0     0     0
        raidz1-0  ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t3d0  ONLINE       -     -     -
          c7t4d0  ONLINE       -     -     -
          c7t2d0  ONLINE       -     -     -

errors: No known data errors
```

Your display may be a bit different.

What is the purpose of the scrub operation? *To ensure data population on the new disk*

11. Using the `zpool` command, destroy the pool `assetpool`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool destroy assetpool
```

Task 2: Troubleshooting ZFS Data Errors in a Mirror Pool

In this task, you inject errors into your data file. Then you implement corrective measures to make sure that the data is restored from the mirror copy.

The following activities are covered in this task:

- Running an explicit scrub
- Restoring data in the mirror pool

Note: Your command output displays may be different than the displays in the practice. In some cases, ZFS may indicate a different number of errors or no errors. It may show errors at different points in the process based upon when it performs certain internal data integrity processes, for example, the scrub operation. The steps in this task demonstrate multiple possible scenarios to assist in understanding why your output would be unpredictable. Some of the factors governing this unpredictability are:

- ZFS is monitoring the errors but can discover all the data errors only after a full scrub. Based upon where it is in the scrub process, it will be able to display the so-far discovered errors. So for this reason, the number can change in subsequent status displays.
- Because ZFS is performing the scrub operation periodically, it depends when it launches it. This will affect the timing of the results displayed to you.
- Based upon the volume of data generated, ZFS may be able to work with the same disk or utilize the spare disk.

Based upon multiple variables in the situation, you will get different output every time you perform this task.

The main objective of this task is to demonstrate a situation where the results can be different with every iteration of the task, while at the same time showing you how ZFS discovers and corrects the errors. This process of discovering and repairing is called self-healing, which is an extremely useful function of ZFS.

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@S11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.0       November 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

3. Use the `zpool` command and create a mirror pool. Check the health of the pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool create assetpool mirror c7t3d0 c7t4d0
spare c7t5d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: none requested
config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool    ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
        spares
          c7t5d0     AVAIL

errors: No known data errors
```

4. Use the `tar` command to create a demonstration data file. Let it generate data for a minute or more, and then break the command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tar cvf /assetpool/data.tar /usr
…
…
/usr/bin/nvidia-xconfig
/usr/bin/alacarte
/usr/bin/iceauth
/usr/bin/ps2ascii
/usr/bin/gvfs-mount
/usr/bin/pmap
/usr/bin/smproxy
/usr/bin/pkglint
/usr/bin/nautilus-connect-server
…
<Ctrl+C>

root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /assetpool
NAME       USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
assetpool  154M   822M   154M  /assetpool
```

For training purposes, you are creating a data file with a significant amount of data in it. Your displays and data will be different.

5. Using the `dd` command, corrupt the data on the first disk.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/dsk/c7t3d0 oseek=100
bs=8192 count=10000 conv=notrunc
10000+0 records in
10000+0 records out
```

If you are not familiar with the `dd` command, refer to the man pages. Using full blocks, you are overlaying 10,000 blocks of 8 kilobytes with zeros. Because you are using the `oseek` option, you are bypassing the beginning data (VTOC and other system-reserved sectors) on the disk.

6. Using the `tar` command, display your data.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tar tvf /assetpool/data.tar
…
…
…
drwxr-xr-x root/sys          0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/
lrwxrwxrwx root/root         0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/tmp -> ../var/tmp
lrwxrwxrwx root/root         0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/mail -> ../var/mail
drwxr-xr-x root/bin          0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/snadm/
…
…
…
```

Is your data still there? *Yes*

7. Using the `zpool` command, display the status of the pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: none requested
config:

        NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool   ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0  ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0  ONLINE       0     0    15
            c7t4d0  ONLINE       0     0     0
        spares
          c7t5d0    AVAIL

errors: No known data errors
```

Note the checksum errors on the disk `c7t3d0`. ZFS has discovered some data errors.

Your display may not show these errors until the scrub is performed in step 11. ZFS discovers the errors based upon multiple factors and one of them is when it performs the scrub.

8. Using the `zpool` commands, take the corrupted disk offline and then bring it online to refresh its status.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool offline assetpool c7t3d0
root@s11-server1:~# zpool online assetpool c7t3d0
warning: device 'c7t3d0' onlined, but remains in degraded state
```

9. Using the `zpool` command, display the pool's status.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
config:

        NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool   ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0  ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0  ONLINE       0     0    19
            c7t4d0  ONLINE       0     0     0
        spares
          c7t5d0    AVAIL

errors: No known data errors
```

Is the pool functional? *Yes*

What actions has ZFS taken? *Due to data errors, it is trying to recover the data as indicated by the resilvering status. By recycling the disk, it has discovered more data errors.*

Your display may not show these errors until the scrub is performed in step 11. ZFS discovers the errors based upon multiple factors and one of them is when it performs the scrub.

Note: Out varies from system to system.

10. Using the `zpool` command, clear the errors and display the pool's status.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool clear assetpool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: resilvered 9K in 0h0m with 0 errors on Thu Dec 15 07:15:31 2012
config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool    ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
        spares
          c7t5d0     AVAIL

errors: No known data errors
```

By clearing the errors, now the corrupted disk seems to be operational and does not report any errors.

11. Using the `zpool` command, scrub the data on the pool, and display the pool's health.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool scrub assetpool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
status: One or more devices has been diagnosed as degraded. An attempt
        was made to correct the error. Applications are unaffected.
action: Determine if the device needs to be replaced, and clear the
        errors using 'zpool clear' or 'fmadm repaired', or replace the
        device with 'zpool replace'.
        Run 'zpool status -v' to see device specific details.
  scan: scrub in progress since Wed Dec 12 05:59:16 2012
    310M scanned out of 976M at 62.1M/s, 0h0m to go
    2.01M repaired, 31.79% done

config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool    ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0   ONLINE       0     0   343  (repairing)
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
        spares
          c7t5d0     AVAIL
```

```
errors: No known data errors
```

Note that ZFS is in the process of scrubbing the data as reported in the scan progress.

You may see a completely different output display based upon when ZFS runs into data errors. This display is included here as a possible outcome.

The following display is another possible outcome you may receive, once again based upon when and how ZFS encounters the errors.

```
pool: assetpool
 state: DEGRADED
status: One or more devices has been diagnosed as degraded. An attempt
        was made to correct the error. Applications are unaffected.
action: Determine if the device needs to be replaced, and clear the
errors
        using 'zpool clear' or 'fmadm repaired', or replace the device
        with 'zpool replace'.
        Run 'zpool status -v' to see device specific details.
  scan: scrub in progress since Wed Dec 12 05:59:16 2012
    310M scanned out of 976M at 62.1M/s, 0h0m to go
    2.01M repaired, 31.79% done
config:

        NAME         STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool    DEGRADED     0     0     0
          mirror-0   DEGRADED     0     0     0
            c7t3d0   DEGRADED     0     0    31  (repairing)
            c7t4d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t5d0   ONLINE       0     0     0
errors: No known data errors
```

Notice that in this example the pool is in the degraded state and that the spare disk `c7t5d0` you assigned in step 3 is now in use and has taken the place of the degraded disk `c7t3d0`.

Now, attempt to clear these errors and then display the status of the pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool clear assetpool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
```

Note that the pool and all the disks are now back online, all the errors have been corrected, and the spare disk `c7t5d0` is still in use. The spare disk should become available by the time you issue the next status command in the following step.

12. Repeat the `zpool status` command to determine if the scrubbing is complete.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
```

In your case, if the scrub is completed before you issue the above command, your results may be very different. The purpose of this step is to display the scrub progress.

13. Using the `zpool` commands, clear the errors and display `status` of the pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool clear assetpool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status assetpool
  pool: assetpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: scrub repaired 47.9M in 0h0m with 0 errors on Thu Dec 15
07:17:26 2012
config:

        NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        assetpool   ONLINE       0     0     0
          mirror-0  ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t3d0  ONLINE       0     0     0
            c7t4d0  ONLINE       0     0     0

errors: No known data errors
```

Now you know that the data corruption has been repaired after the scrub operation.

14. Using the `tar` command, display your data.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tar tvf /assetpool/data.tar
…
…
…
drwxr-xr-x root/sys          0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/
lrwxrwxrwx root/root         0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/tmp -> ../var/tmp
lrwxrwxrwx root/root         0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/mail -> ../var/mail
drwxr-xr-x root/bin          0 Oct 20 17:34 usr/snadm/
…
…
…
```

Is your data still there? *Yes*

15. Using the `zpool destroy` command, delete the pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool destroy assetpool
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list

NAME    SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool  31.8G  5.61G  26.1G  17%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
```

This concludes the ZFS troubleshooting topic.

Practices for Lesson 5: Configuring Network and Traffic Failover

Chapter 5

Practice Overview for Lesson 5

Practices Overview

Following the predeployment test plan, it is now time to review the Oracle Solaris 11.1 networking functionality. Your company's business applications, such as Oracle CRM, work with the data that is being transmitted via the network interfaces configured on server and client hosts. Because you will be monitoring the transaction traffic load and managing the network interfaces, it is critical for you to know how the networking is configured. To provide you with an orientation to the network, the following topics are covered in this practice:

- Modifying the Reactive Network configuration
- Configuring the Network File System
- Configuring link aggregation
- Implementing link failover by using IP multipathing

Note: Your command output displays may be different than the displays in the practice, especially storage, processes, and other session-oriented content.

Look at your checklist to see where you are. You have just completed managing the business application data and you are now ready to test the network configuration and network failover.

√	Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
	Managing Services and Service Properties
	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting Software Failures

Practice 5-1: Managing a Reactive Network Configuration

Overview

Reactive network is a technology that simplifies and automates network configuration on Oracle Solaris 11.1. The key reactive network components are the network profiles, which allow you to specify various network configurations to be created depending on the current network conditions.

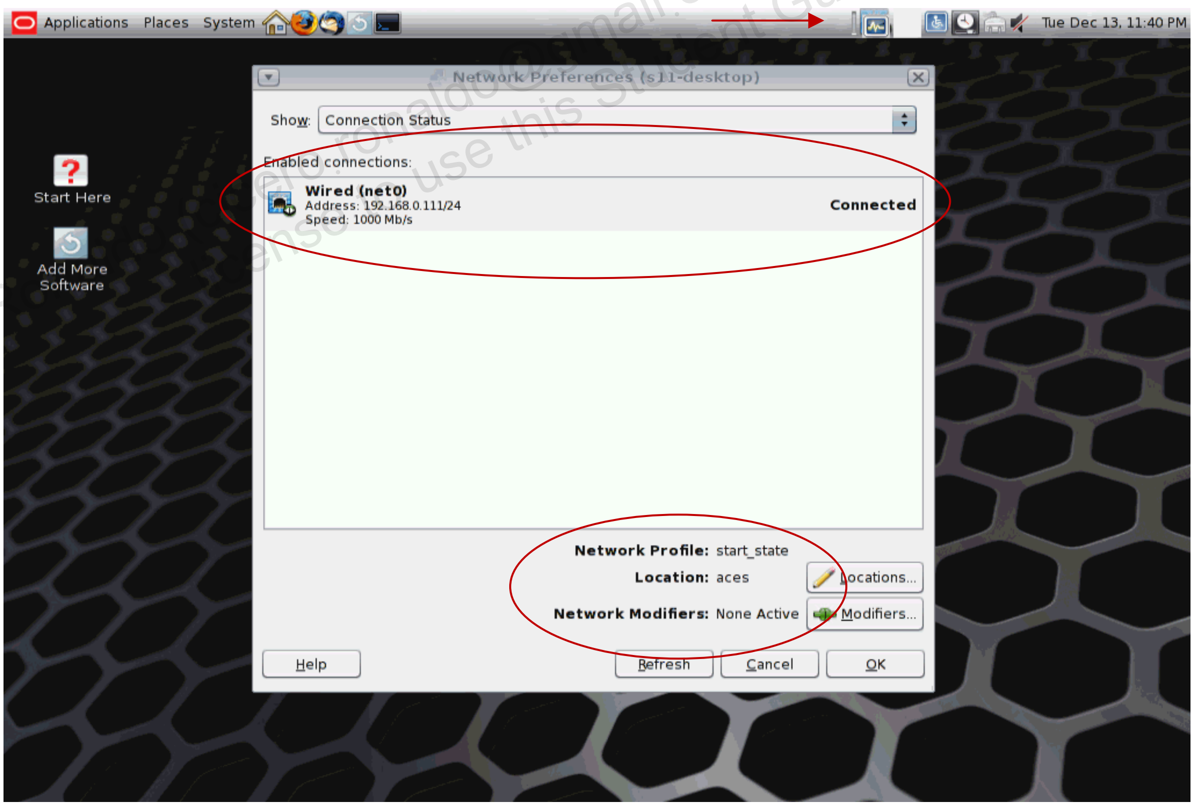
In this practice, you perform the following tasks:

- Assess the current Reactive Network configuration.
- Create and deploy a Reactive Network profile.

Task 1: Assessing the Current Reactive Network Configuration

Note: For Reactive Network to configure the host's network interface “auto-magically,” the DHCP service must be available.

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` and `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machines are running. If the virtual machines are not running, start them now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine as the `oracle` user with `oracle1` as the password.
3. Click the Network Preferences icon to determine the NCPs and network interfaces (NCUs) that are currently enabled by Reactive Network. Click OK to continue.



4. Open a terminal window, and `su` to `root`.

5. Display the current network configuration for s11-desktop.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ           TYPE     STATE        ADDR
lo0/v4            static   ok           127.0.0.1/8
net0/v4           static   ok           192.168.0.111/24
lo0/v6            static   ok           ::1/128
net0/v6           addrconf disabled     ::
```

6. List all available Reactive Network profiles and their current state.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm list
TYPE        PROFILE        STATE
ncp         Automatic      disabled
ncp         start_state    online
ncu:phys    net0           online
ncu:ip      net0           online
ncp         DefaultFixed   disabled
loc         Automatic      offline
loc         NoNet          offline
loc         aces           online
```

7. List the Reactive Network Automatic profile.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm list Automatic
TYPE        PROFILE        STATE
ncp         Automatic      disabled
loc         Automatic      offline
```

8. List the Reactive Network start_state profile.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm list start_state
TYPE        PROFILE        STATE
ncp         start_state    online
ncu:phys    net0           online
ncu:ip      net0           online
```

9. List the Reactive Network location profiles.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm list -p loc
TYPE        PROFILE        STATE
loc         Automatic      offline
loc         NoNet          offline
loc         aces           online
```

10. List all the `phys` and `ip` network configuration units (NCUs) in the active network configuration profiles (NCPs).

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm list -c phys
TYPE         PROFILE        STATE
ncu:phys     net0           online
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm list -c ip
TYPE         PROFILE        STATE
ncu:ip       net0           online
```

11. List all the Reactive Network profiles and their auxiliary state.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm list -x
TYPE        PROFILE        STATE          AUXILIARY STATE
ncp         Automatic      disabled       disabled by administrator
ncp         start_state    online         active
ncu:phys    net0           online         interface/link is up
ncu:ip      net0           online         interface/link is up
ncp         DefaultFixed   disabled       disabled by administrator
loc         Automatic      offline        conditions for activation are unmet
loc         NoNet          offline        conditions for activation are unmet
loc         aces           online         active
```

12. Use the `netcfg export` command to create backups of the `start_state` and `aces` profiles.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg export -f start_state_ncp_backup ncp \
start_state
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg export -f aces_loc_backup loc aces
root@s11-desktop:~# ls *backup
aces_loc_backup  start_state_ncp_backup
```

13. Use the `netcfg` utility to select the `start_state` profile and list its NCUs.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg
netcfg> select ncp start_state
netcfg:ncp:start_state> list
ncp:start_state
      management-type reactive
NCUs:
       phys    net0
       ip      net0
```

14. Select the `phys` NCU and display its properties.

```
netcfg:ncp:start_state> select ncu phys net0
netcfg:ncp:start_state:ncu:net0> list
ncu:net0
        type                    link
        class                   phys
        parent                  "start_state"
        activation-mode         manual
        enabled                 true
netcfg:ncp:start_state:ncu:net0> end
```

15. Select the `ip` NCU and display its properties.

```
netcfg:ncp:start_state> select ncu ip net0
netcfg:ncp:start_state:ncu:net0> list
ncu:net0
        type                    interface
        class                   ip
        parent                  "start_state"
        enabled                 true
        ip-version              ipv4
        ipv4-addrsrc            static
        ipv4-addr               "192.168.0.111/24"
        ipv6-addrsrc            dhcp,autoconf
netcfg:ncp:start_state:ncu:net0> end
netcfg:ncp:start_state> end
netcfg>
```

16. Select the `aces` location profile and list its properties.

```
netcfg> select loc aces
netcfg:loc:aces> list
loc:aces
        activation-mode                 conditional-all
        conditions                      "system domain is mydomain.com"
        enabled                         true
        nameservices                    dns
        nameservices-config-file        "/etc/nsswitch.dns"
        dns-nameservice-configsrc       manual
        dns-nameservice-domain          "mydomain.com"
        dns-nameservice-servers         "192.168.0.100"
netcfg:loc:aces> end
netcfg> exit
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

Task 2: Creating and Deploying a Reactive Network Profile

1. Create an NCP named `oracle_profile`.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg
netcfg> create ncp oracle_profile
```

2. Create a `phys` NCU for the `net1` data link.

```
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile> create ncu phys net1
Created ncu 'net1'.  Walking properties ...
activation-mode (manual) [manual|prioritized]> manual
mac-addr> <Press Return>
autopush> <Press Return>
mtu> <Press Return>
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile:ncu:net1> list
ncu:net1
        type                    link
        class                   phys
        parent                  "oracle_profile"
        activation-mode         manual
        enabled                 true
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile:ncu:net1> end
Committed changes
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile> list
ncp:oracle_profile
     management-type reactive
NCUs:
     phys  net1
```

3. Create an `ip` NCU for the `net1` data link.

```
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile> create ncu ip net1
Created ncu 'net1'.  Walking properties ...
ip-version (ipv4,ipv6) [ipv4|ipv6]> ipv4
ipv4-addrsrc [dhcp|static]> static
ipv4-addr> 192.168.0.111
ipv4-default-route> <Press Return>
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile:ncu:net1> list
ncu:net1
        type                    interface
        class                   ip
        parent                  "oracle_profile"
        enabled                 true
        ip-version              ipv4
        ipv4-addrsrc            static
        ipv4-addr               "192.168.0.111"
```

```
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile:ncu:net1> verify
All properties verified
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile:ncu:net1> commit
Committed changes
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile:ncu:net1> end
netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile> list ncu ip net1
ncu:net1
      type            interface
      class           ip
      parent          "oracle_profile"
      enabled         true
      ip-version      ipv4
      ipv4-addrsrc    static
      ipv4-addr       "192.168.0.111"

netcfg:ncp:oracle_profile> end
netcfg>
```

4. Create a location (`loc`) NCP named `classroom`.

```
netcfg> create loc classroom
Created loc 'classroom'.  Walking properties ...
activation-mode (manual) [manual|conditional-any|conditional-
all]> conditional-all
conditions> "system-domain is mydomain.com"
nameservices (dns) [dns|files|nis|ldap]> dns
nameservices-config-file ("/etc/nsswitch.dns")> <Press Return>
dns-nameservice-configsrc (dhcp) [manual|dhcp]> manual
dns-nameservice-domain> "mydomain.com"
dns-nameservice-servers> "192.168.0.100"
dns-nameservice-search> <Press Return>
dns-nameservice-sortlist> <Press Return>
dns-nameservice-options> <Press Return>
nfsv4-domain> <Press Return>
ipfilter-config-file> <Press Return>
ipfilter-v6-config-file> Press Return>
ipnat-config-file> <Press Return>
ippool-config-file> <Press Return>
ike-config-file> <Press Return>
ipsecpolicy-config-file> <Press Return>
netcfg:loc:classroom> list
loc:classroom
   activation-mode              conditional-all
   conditions                   "system-domain is mydomain.com"
```

```
   enabled                          false
   nameservices                     dns
   nameservices-config-file         "/etc/nsswitch.dns"
   dns-nameservice-configsrc        manual
   dns-nameservice-domain           "mydomain.com"
   dns-nameservice-servers          "192.168.0.100"
netcfg:loc:classroom> verify
All properties verified
netcfg:loc:classroom> commit
Committed changes
netcfg:loc:classroom> end
netcfg> exit
```

5. Use the `netcfg list` command to display all the profiles that exist at the current scope.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg list
NCPs:
      Automatic
      start_state
      DefaultFixed
      oracle_profile
Locations:
      Automatic
      NoNet
      aces
      classroom
```

6. Use the `netcfg export` command to create backups of your `oracle_profile` and `classroom` profiles.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg export -f oracle_ncp_backup ncp \
oracle_profile
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg export -f classroom_loc_backup \
loc classroom
root@s11-desktop:~# ls *backup
aces_loc_backup       oracle_ncp_backup
classroom_loc_backup  start_state_ncp_backup
```

7. Destroy the `classroom` profile and show the results.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg destroy loc classroom
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg list
NCPs:
     Automatic
     start_state
     DefaultFixed
     oracle_profile

Locations:
     aces
     Automatic
     NoNet
```

8. Recover the `classroom` profile from your backup and show the results.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg -f classroom_loc_backup
Configuration read.
root@s11-desktop:~# netcfg list
NCPs:
     Automatic
     start_state
     DefaultFixed
     oracle_profile
Locations:
     Automatic
     NoNet
    aces
    classroom
```

9. Use the `netadm enable` command to enable the `classroom` and `oracle_profile` profiles.

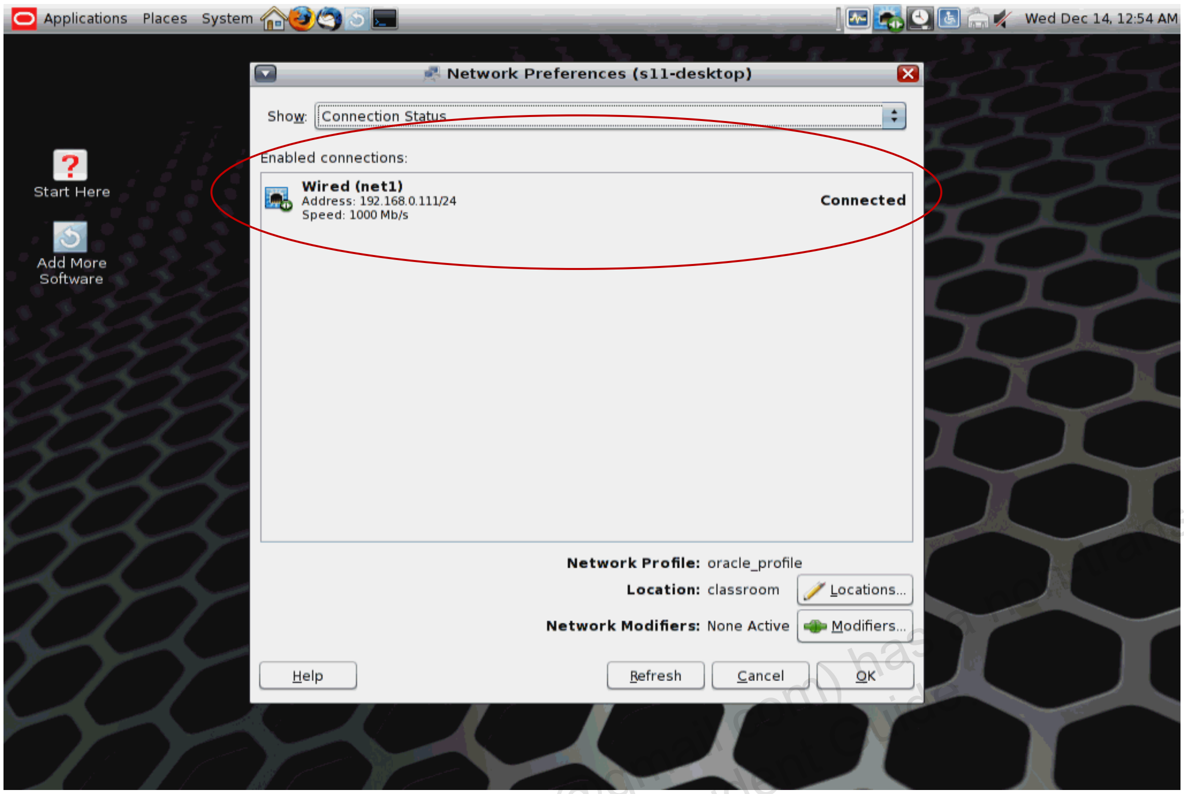
```
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm enable classroom
Enabling loc 'classroom'
root@s11-desktop:~# netadm enable oracle_profile
Enabling ncp 'oracle_profile'
```

10. Reboot the system to verify that `oracle_profile` and `classroom` are the default Reactive Network profiles.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# init 6
```

11. After the system reboots, log in as `oracle`. Use `oracle1` as the password.

12. Open the Network Preferences dialog box. Click OK to continue.



Note that the `net1` network interface is now connected to the network.

13. Open a terminal window `su` to `root`. Use the `ping` command to verify communication with a remote host.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# ping s11-server1
s11-server1 is alive.
```

14. Power-off the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine.

Practice 5-2: Configuring the Network File System

Overview

In this practice, you configure the NFS server as well as the NFS client. You share a documentation folder from the server and access it on the client host. The following activities are covered:

- Configuring the NFS server
- Configuring the NFS client

Task 1: Configuring the NFS Server

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume primary administrator privileges.
3. Display the current status of the ZFS pool and the file systems.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool list
NAME   SIZE  ALLOC   FREE  CAP  DEDUP  HEALTH  ALTROOT
rpool 31.8G  9.90G  21.8G  31%  1.00x  ONLINE  -
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r /rpool
NAME                        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool                      9.98G  21.3G    39K  /rpool
rpool/ROOT                 1.89G  21.3G    31K  legacy
rpool/ROOT/solaris         1.89G  21.3G  1.61G  /
rpool/ROOT/solaris/var      235M  21.3G  90.2M  /var
rpool/dump                 1.03G  21.3G  1.00G  -
rpool/export               6.02G  21.3G   274M  /export
rpool/export/IPS           5.74G  21.3G  5.74G  /export/IPS
rpool/export/home          10.2M  21.3G    38K  /export/home
rpool/export/home/gail     33.5K  21.3G  33.5K  /export/home/gail
rpool/swap                 1.03G  21.3G    1.00G  -
```

Your display may be different. Before you create the docs file system, you want to make sure that it does not exist already.

4. Using the `zfs create` command, create a ZFS file system called `rpool/export/home/docs`. Confirm the creation of the file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create rpool/export/home/docs
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list /export/home/docs
NAME                        USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/export/home/docs       31K  21.3G    31K  /export/home/docs
```

What is the mount point of `rpool/export/home/docs`? `/export/home/docs`

5. Using the `touch` command, create a file called `assetlist` in `/export/home/docs`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cd /export/home/docs
root@s11-server1:/export/home/docs# touch assetlist
root@s11-server1:/export/home/docs# cd
```

6. Use the `zfs` commands to share the ZFS file system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set \
share=name=docs,path=/export/home/docs,prot=nfs \
rpool/export/home/docs
name=docs,path=/export/home/docs,prot=nfs
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set sharenfs=on rpool/export/home/docs
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set compression=on rpool/export/home/docs
root@s11-server1:~# share
docs    /export/home/docs   nfs   sec=sys,rw
shares  /export/share       nfs   sec=sys,rw
```

This shows that the `/export/home/docs` resource is being shared.

7. Verify that the `nfs` services are up and running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs -a | grep nfs
disabled       9:13:15   svc:/network/nfs/cbd:default
disabled       9:13:15   svc:/network/nfs/client:default
online         9:13:15 svc:/network/nfs/fedfs-client:default
online         9:13:15 svc:/network/nfs/status:default
online         9:13:15 svc:/network/nfs/mapid:default
online         9:13:18 svc:/network/nfs/rquota:default
online         9:13:36 svc:/network/nfs/nlockmgr:default
online         9:13:37 svc:/network/nfs/server:default
```

Is `nfs/server` up and running? *Yes*

Task 2: Configuring the NFS Client

1. Verify that `Sol11-Server1` is still running. Start the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine and log in as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Open a terminal window and assume administrator privileges.
2. Use the `dfshares` command to confirm whether you can view the shared resource from the `s11-desktop` virtual machine. Create a directory called `/docs` to use as the mount point.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# dfshares s11-server1
RESOURCE                              SERVER      ACCESS    TRANSPORT
s11-server1:/export/home/docs     s11-server1     -           -
root@s11-desktop:~# mkdir /docs
```

3. Use the `mount` command to specify the resource to be mounted on the `/docs` directory.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# mount -F nfs -o ro s11-server1:/export/home/docs \
/docs
root@s11-desktop:~# cd /docs
root@s11-desktop:/docs# ls
assetlist
```

This demonstrates that the `assetlist` file in `/export/home/docs` can be shared on `s11-desktop` from `s11-server1`.

4. Using the `umount` command, unmount the `/docs` directory.

```
root@s11-desktop:/docs# cd
root@s11-desktop:~# umount /docs
```

Note: If you are unable to unmount, then run the `umount -f /docs` command.

5. Return to `s11-server1` and stop sharing the directory.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set sharenfs=off rpool/export/home/docs
```

6. Using the `share` command, check whether any resource is being shared.

```
root@s11-server1:~# share
```

Practice 5-3: Configuring a Link Aggregation

Overview

Link aggregation requires at least two network interfaces. The network interfaces must be unplumbed before they can be aggregated. In this practice, you combine four network interfaces into one link aggregation called `crmpipe0` to create a larger network pipe for the CRM application. Then you manage the interfaces, which includes removing, adding, and eventually deleting the `crmpipe0` link aggregation. This portrays different network management situations while working with the CRM application (for example, adjusting the bandwidth as needed).

Task 1: Configuring a Link Aggregation

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` is running and that you have assumed administrator privileges. Disable IP filtering.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipf -D
```

2. Delete the IP interface for the `net0` data link.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-ip net0
```

3. List the network links that are currently configured in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK     CLASS      MTU   STATE          OVER
net1     phys       1500  unknown        --
net2     phys       1500  unknown        --
net0     phys       1500  unknown        --
net3     phys       1500  unknown        --
```

4. Create a link aggregation named `crmpipe0` that consists of the `net0`, `net1`, `net2`, and `net3` network interfaces, and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm create-aggr -l net0 -l net1 \
-l net2 -l net3 crmpipe0
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK      CLASS     MTU  STATE   OVER
net1      phys      1500 up      --
net2      phys      1500 up      --
net0      phys      1500 up      --
net3      phys      1500 up      --
crmpipe0  aggr      1500 up      --     net0 net1 net2 net3
root@s11-server1:~$ dladm show-aggr
LINK           MODE  POLICY   ADDRPOLICY      LACPACTIVITY LACPTIMER
crmpipe0       trunk L4       auto            off          short
root@s11-server1:~$
```

5. Create an IP interface for the `crmpipe0` data link and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-ip crmpipe0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-if
IFNAME      CLASS     STATE     ACTIVE OVER
lo0         loopback ok        yes    --
crmpipe0    ip        down      no     --
```

6 Run the `ipadm` command to create the static IPv4 address for the `s11-server1` system on the `crmpipe0` interface, and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-addr -T static \
-a 192.168.0.100/24 crmpipe0/v4
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ              TYPE      STATE    ADDR
lo0/v4               static    ok        127.0.0.1/8
crmpipe0/v4          static    ok        192.168.0.100/24
lo0/v6               static    ok        ::1/128
```

7. Log in to the `Sol11-Desktop` system and use the `ping` command to verify connectivity to the `s11-server1` server.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# ping s11-server1
s11-server1 is alive
```

Note: Reboot the system if the `ping` command does not work.

Task 2: Removing the Link Aggregation

1. From `Sol11-Server1`, delete the `crmpipe0` IP interface by using the `ipadm` command

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-ip crmpipe0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ            TYPE      STATE         ADDR
lo0/v4             static    ok            127.0.0.1/8
lo0/v6             static    ok            ::1/128
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK                CLASS     MTU     STATE     OVER
net1                phys      1500    up        --
net2                phys      1500    up        --
net0                phys      1500    up        --
net3                phys      1500    up        --
crmpipe0            aggr      1500    up        net0 net1 net2 net3
```

2. Using the `dladm` command, delete the `crmpipe0` aggregation.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm delete-aggr crmpipe0
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK                CLASS     MTU    STATE    OVER
net1                phys      1500   unknown  --
net2                phys      1500   unknown  --
net0                phys      1500   unknown  --
net3                phys      1500   unknown  --
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-if
IFNAME     CLASS    STATE    ACTIVE OVER
lo0        loopback ok       yes    --
```

Currently, the link aggregation has been removed.

Note: At this time, you want to keep these links unconfigured because they will be needed in this state for the next practice.

Practice 5-4: Configuring IPMP

Overview

IP network multipathing (IPMP) provides physical interface failure detection, transparent network access failover, and packet load balancing.

An IPMP configuration typically consists of two or more physical interfaces on the same system that are attached to the same LAN. These interfaces can belong to an IPMP group in either of the following configurations:

- Active-active configuration: In this configuration, all underlying interfaces are active. An active interface is an IP interface that is currently available for use by the IPMP group. By default, an underlying interface becomes active when you configure the interface to become a part of an IPMP group.
- Active-standby configuration: In this configuration, at least one interface is administratively configured as standby. If an active interface fails, the standby interface is automatically deployed as needed. You can configure as many standby interfaces as you want for an IPMP group.

In this practice, you configure both active-active and active-standby configurations.

Task 1: Creating an Active-Active IPMP Configuration

In this task, you configure an active-active IPMP group that consists of two network interfaces.

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` and `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machines are running. If any virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user and `su` to `root`.
3. Use the `ipadm` command to display the IP network interfaces that are currently configured in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-if
IFNAME      CLASS    STATE    ACTIVE OVER
lo0         loopback ok       yes    --
net0        ip       ok       yes    --
```

Note: If you performed the previous practice, you will *not* see `net0` in this display. This step is shown here in case you perform this practice independently.

4. If you did not delete the `net0` network interface as part of Practice 5-3, delete it now and display the results. If you have already deleted the network interface, go to step 5.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-ip net0
```

Note: If you performed the previous practice, you will *not* see `net0` in this display. This step is shown here in case you perform this practice independently.

.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-if
IFNAME      CLASS    STATE    ACTIVE OVER
lo0         loopback ok       yes    --
```

When configuring IPMP, you must assign all network interfaces that are attached to the same LAN to an IPMP group. In this step, you deleted the `net0` interface in preparation for configuring it in an IPMP group.

5. Rename the `net0` data link to `link0_ipmp0` and the `net1` data link to `link1_ipmp0`. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm rename-link net0 link0_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# dladm rename-link net1 link1_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK         CLASS     MTU    STATE       OVER
link1_ipmp0  phys      1500   unknown     --
net2         phys      1500   unknown     --
link0_ipmp0  phys      1500   unknown     --
net3         phys      1500   unknown     --
```

6. Create IP interfaces for the `link0_ipmp0` and `link1_ipmp0` data links. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-ip link0_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-ip link1_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-if
IFNAME      CLASS    STATE    ACTIVE OVER
lo0         loopback ok       yes    --
link0_ipmp0 ip       down     no     --
link1_ipmp0 ip       down     no     --
```

7. Create an IPMP group named `ipmp0`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-ipmp ipmp0
```

8. Add the `link0_ipmp0` and `link1_ipmp0` IP interfaces to the `ipmp0` IPMP group and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm add-ipmp -i link0_ipmp0 \
-i link1_ipmp0 ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP     GROUPNAME  STATE   FDT     INTERFACES
ipmp0     ipmp0      ok      --      link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
```

9. Assign two static IP addresses to the IPMP interface to be used for data access.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-addr -T static \
 -a 192.168.0.112/24 ipmp0/v4add1
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-addr -T static \
 -a 192.168.0.113/24 ipmp0/v4add2
```

10. Assign a static IP address to each IPMP subinterface to be used for link testing.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-addr -T static \
 -a 192.168.0.142/24 link0_ipmp0/test
Dec 14 02:59:46 s11-server1 in.mpathd[113]: At least one
NOFAILOVER test address has been configured on group 'ipmp0';
link-state fault-detection setting will be ignored for the group
```

If you receive the above message, ignore it because link-state fault-detection is not your objective

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-addr -T static \
 -a 192.168.0.143/24 link1_ipmp0/test
```

11. Display the data and test the IP addresses.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ           TYPE     STATE        ADDR
lo0/v4            static   ok           127.0.0.1/8
link0_ipmp0/test  static   ok           192.168.0.142/24
link1_ipmp0/test  static   ok           192.168.0.143/24
ipmp0/v4add1      static   ok           192.168.0.112/24
ipmp0/v4add2      static   ok           192.168.0.113/24
lo0/v6            static   ok           ::1/128
```

12. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP address information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -an
ADDRESS         STATE  GROUP  INBOUND     OUTBOUND
::              down   ipmp0  --          --
192.168.0.113   up     ipmp0  link0_ipmp0 link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
192.168.0.112   up     ipmp0  link1_ipmp0 link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
```

Note: The `INBOUND` traffic is restricted to one interface depending on the IP address that is used. The `OUTBOUND` traffic is spread across both interfaces.

13. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IP interface information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -i
INTERFACE   ACTIVE  GROUP     FLAGS     LINK    PROBE    STATE
link0_ipmp0 yes     ipmp0     --mbM--   up      ok       ok
link1_ipmp0 yes     ipmp0     -------   up      ok       ok
```

The interface `FLAGS` are defined as:

`i` = Unusable due to being `INACTIVE`

`s` = Masked `STANDBY`

`m` = Nominated to send/receive IPv4 multicast for its IPMP group

`b` = Nominated to send/receive IPv4 broadcast for its IPMP group

`M` = Nominated to send/receive IPv6 multicast for its IPMP group

`d` = Unusable due to being down

`h` = Unusable due to being brought `OFFLINE` by `in.mpathd` (IPMP daemon) because of a duplicate hardware address

14. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display information about test address targets.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -nt
INTERFACE   MODE       TESTADDR          TARGETS
link0_ipmp0 multicast  192.168.0.142     192.168.0.111
link1_ipmp0 multicast  192.168.0.143     192.168.0.111
```

Note the `Sol11-Desktop` IP address 192.168.0.111 under the `Targets` column. This VM should be up for you to receive this display.

15. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the current probe information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -pn
TIME      INTERFACE   PROBE  NETRTT   RTT     RTTAVG   TARGET
0.49s     link0_ipmp0 i195   0.70ms   1.29ms  0.71ms   192.168.0.111
0.73s     link1_ipmp0 i145   0.68ms   0.96ms  1.94ms   192.168.0.111
1.38s     link0_ipmp0 i196   0.59ms   0.73ms  0.71ms   192.168.0.111
2.11s     link1_ipmp0 i146   0.51ms   0.69ms  1.78ms   192.168.0.111
3.25s     link0_ipmp0 i197   0.50ms   0.58ms  0.70ms   192.168.0.111
3.70s     link1_ipmp0 i147   0.60ms   1.01ms  1.69ms   192.168.0.111
4.58s     link0_ipmp0 i198   0.56ms   0.72ms  0.70ms   192.168.0.111
5.16s     link1_ipmp0 i148   0.43ms   0.60ms  1.55ms   192.168.0.111
6.04s     link0_ipmp0 i199   0.53ms   0.60ms  0.69ms   192.168.0.111
6.61s     link1_ipmp0 i149   0.77ms   0.84ms  1.46ms   192.168.0.111
^C
```

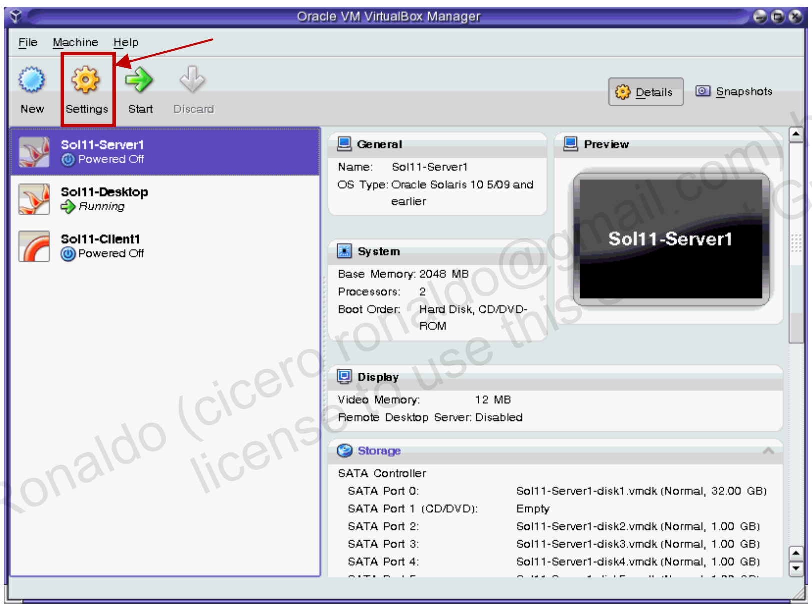
Your display may be different.

Task 2: Testing the Active-Active IPMP Configuration

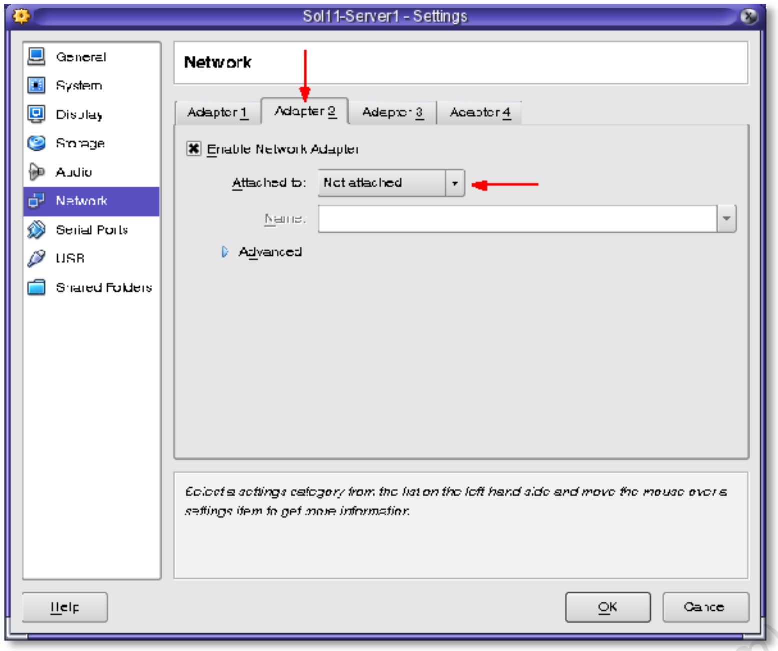
In this task, you test the active-active IPMP configuration by causing one of the subinterfaces to fail. Then you verify that the system is still accessible by using the remaining interface.

1. Shut down the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.

2. Open the VirtualBox Manager GUI and click the Settings utility for the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.



3. Under Network settings, select Adapter 2 and set the “Attached to:” field to “Not attached.” Click OK to continue.



4. Start the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.

   Note: You might see a series of error messages about the failed IPMP interface and other services. You can ignore these messages and press Enter to continue to the console login prompt.

5. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user and `su` to `root`.
6. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display IPMP group information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP     GROUPNAME   STATE     FDT      INTERFACES
ipmp0      ipmp0      degraded  10.00s   link1_ipmp0  [link0_ipmp0]
```

   Note that `link0_ipmp0` has been boxed (`[link0_ipmp0]`) indicating that it has failed.

7. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IP interface information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -i
INTERFACE     ACTIVE   GROUP       FLAGS      LINK     PROBE     STATE
link0_ipmp0   no       ipmp0       -------    up       failed    failed
link1_ipmp0   yes      ipmp0       --mbM--    up       ok        ok
```

   The `link0_ipmp0` interface is no longer active.

8. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the current probe information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -pn
TIME      INTERFACE    PROBE  NETRTT  RTT    RTTAVG  TARGET
0.21s     link1_ipmp0  i505   0.62ms  1.11ms 0.70ms  192.168.0.111
-1.99s    link0_ipmp0  i504   --      --     --      192.168.0.111
1.15s     link1_ipmp0  i506   0.51ms  0.65ms 0.70ms  192.168.0.111
0.25s     link0_ipmp0  i506   --      --     --      192.168.0.111
-1.02s    link0_ipmp0  i505   --      --     --      192.168.0.111
2.85s     link1_ipmp0  i507   0.56ms  0.70m  0.70ms  192.168.0.111
4.25s     link1_ipmp0  i508   0.41ms  0.55ms 0.68ms  192.168.0.111
^C
```

Note that `link0_ipmp0` is failing probe tests.

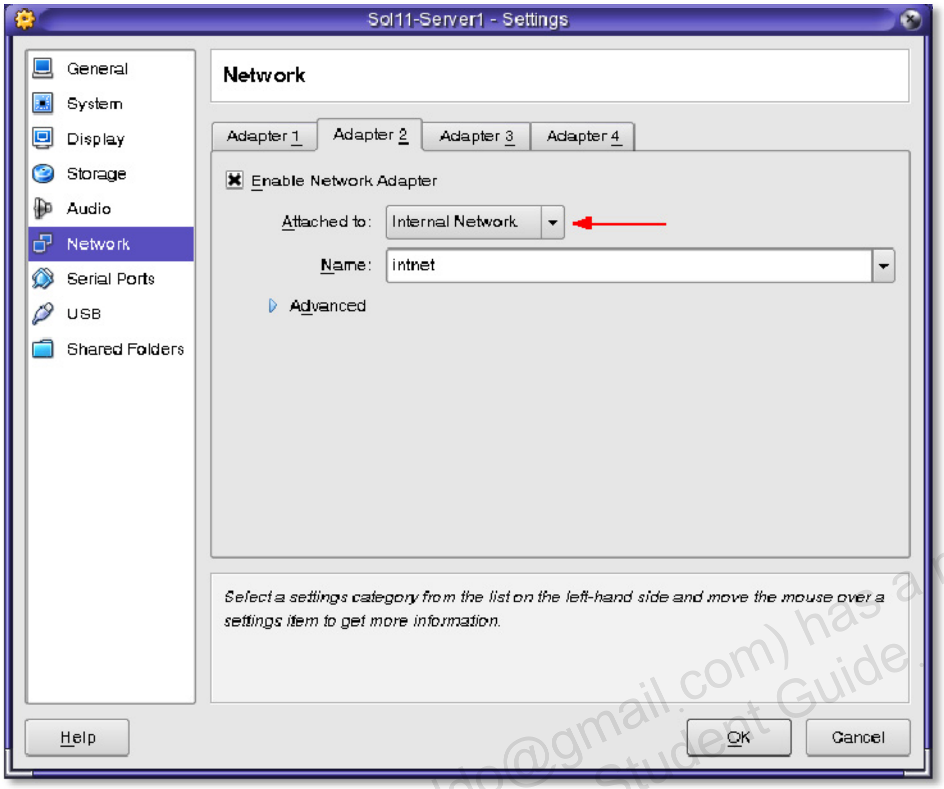
Your display may be different.

9. Log in to the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine and ping the IPMP data IP addresses configured on the Sol11-Server1.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# ping 192.168.0.112
192.168.0.112 is alive
 root@s11-desktop:~# ping 192.168.0.113
192.168.0.113 is alive
```

10. Return to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine and shut it down.
11. Open the VirtualBox Manager GUI and click the Settings utility for the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.

12. Under Network settings, select Adapter 2 and set the “Attached to:” field to Internal Network. Click OK to continue.



13. Start the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.
14. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user and `su` to `root`.
15. Use the `ipmpstat` command to verify that the IPMP group `ipmp0 STATE` is `ok`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP      GROUPNAME   STATE    FDT       INTERFACES
ipmp0      ipmp0       ok       10.00s    link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
```

Task 3: Creating an Active-Standby IPMP Configuration

In this task, you reconfigure the `ipmp0` IPMP group from an active-active configuration to an active-standby configuration.

1. On the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine, display the data links.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK         CLASS     MTU    STATE         OVER
link1_ipmp0  phys      1500   up            --
net2         phys      1500   unknown       --
link0_ipmp0  phys      1500   up            --
net3         phys      1500   unknown       --
```

2. Rename the `net2` data link to `link2_ipmp0` and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm rename-link net2 link2_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK        CLASS     MTU    STATE    OVER
link1_ipmp0 phys      1500   up       --
link2_ipmp0 phys      1500   unknown  --
link0_ipmp0 phys      1500   up       --
net3        phys      1500   unknown  --
```

3. Create IP interfaces for the `link2_ipmp0` data links and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-ip link2_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-if
IFNAME     CLASS    STATE    ACTIVE OVER
lo0        loopback ok       yes    --
ipmp0      ipmp     ok       yes    link1_ipmp0 link0_ipmp0
link1_ipmp0 ip      ok       yes    --
link0_ipmp0 ip      ok       yes    --
link2_ipmp0 ip      down     no     --
```

4. Add the `link2_ipmp0` IP interfaces to the `ipmp0` IPMP group and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm add-ipmp -i link2_ipmp0 ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP GROUPNAME STATE FDT      INTERFACES
ipmp0 ipmp0     ok    10.00s  link2_ipmp0 link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
```

5. Assign a static IP address to the IPMP subinterface `link2_ipmp0` to be used for link testing and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-addr -T static \
 -a 192.168.0.144/24 link2_ipmp0/test
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ           TYPE     STATE  ADDR
lo0/v4            static   ok     127.0.0.1/8
ipmp0/v4add1      static   ok     192.168.0.112/24
ipmp0/v4add2      static   ok     192.168.0.113/24
link1_ipmp0/test  static   ok     192.168.0.143/24
link0_ipmp0/test  static   ok     192.168.0.142/24
link2_ipmp0/test  static   ok     192.168.0.144/24
lo0/v6            static   ok     ::1/128
```

Note: Your display may be different.

6. Show the current setting of the `standby` property for the `link2_ipmp0` interface.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-ifprop -p standby link2_ipmp0
IFNAME      PROPERTY PROTO PERM CURRENT PERSISTENT DEFAULT POSSIBLE
link2_ipmp0 standby  ip    rw   off     --         off     on,off
```

Note that `standby` is currently turned off.

7. Set the `standby` property for the `link2_ipmp0` interface to `on` and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm set-ifprop -p standby=on -m ip link2_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-ifprop -p standby link2_ipmp0
IFNAME      PROPERTY PROTO PERM CURRENT  PERSISTENT DEFAULT  POSSIBLE
link2_ipmp0 standby   ip    rw   on       on         off      on,off
```

8. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP group information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP GROUPNAME STATE FDT    INTERFACES
ipmp0 ipmp0     ok    10.00s link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0 (link2_ipmp0)
```

Note that the `link2_ipmp0` interface is enclosed in parenthesis. This indicates that the interface is set to `standby`.

9. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP address information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -an
ADDRESS            STATE  GROUP  INBOUND     OUTBOUND
::                 down   ipmp0  --          --
192.168.0.113      up     ipmp0  link0_ipmp0 link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
192.168.0.112      up     ipmp0  link1_ipmp0 link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
```

Note that the `link2_ipmp0` interface is not actively used for `INBOUND` and `OUTBOUND` traffic.

10. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP interface information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -i
INTERFACE   ACTIVE  GROUP     FLAGS     LINK    PROBE     STATE
link2_ipmp0 no      ipmp0     is-----   up      ok        ok
link0_ipmp0 yes     ipmp0     -------   up      ok        ok
link1_ipmp0 yes     ipmp0     --mbM--   up      ok        ok
```

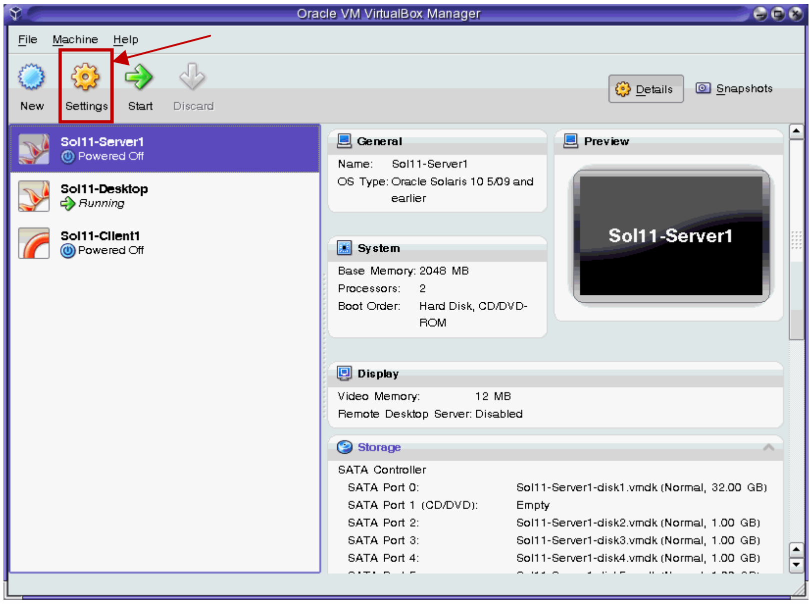
Note the flags for the `link2_ipmp0` interface. This indicates that the interface is inactive and set to `standby`.

Task 4: Testing the Active-Standby IPMP Configuration

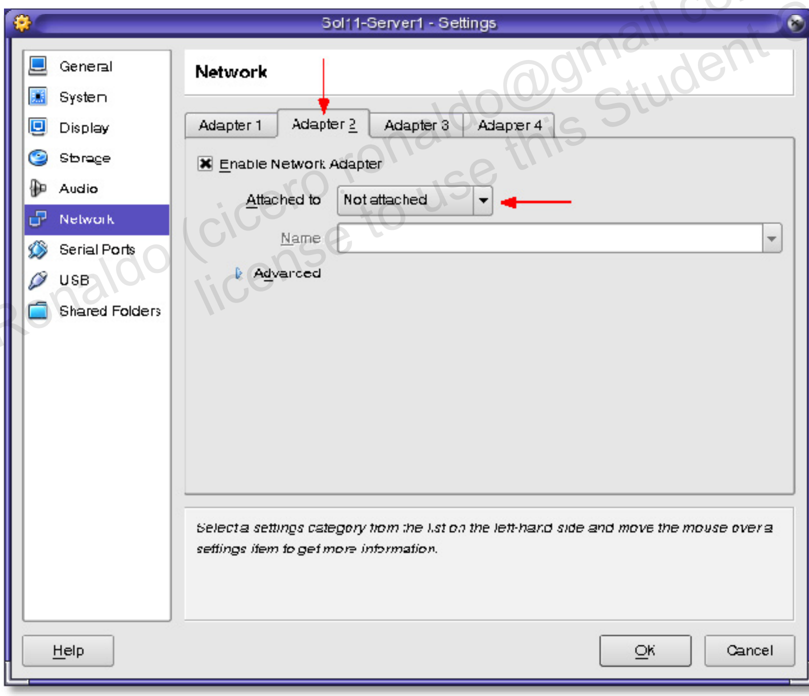
In this task, you test the active-standby IPMP configuration by causing one of the subinterfaces to fail. Then you verify that the system is still accessible by using the remaining interface.

1. Shut down the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.

2. Open the VirtualBox Manager GUI and click the Settings utility for the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.



3. Under Network settings, select Adapter 2 and set the “Attached to:” field to “Not attached.” Click OK to continue.



4. Start the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.
5. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user and `su` to `root`.

   Note: You might see a series of error messages about the failed IPMP interface. You can ignore these messages and press Enter to continue.

6. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP group information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP  GROUPNAME  STATE     FDT     INTERFACES
ipmp0  ipmp0      degraded  10.00s  link2_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0 [link0_ipmp0]
```

Note that `link1_ipmp0` has been boxed (`[link1_ipmp0]`), indicating that it has failed.

7. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IP interface information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -i
INTERFACE    ACTIVE  GROUP      FLAGS     LINK    PROBE    STATE
link2_ipmp0  yes     ipmp0      -s-----   up      ok       ok
link0_ipmp0  no      ipmp0      -------   up      failed   failed
link1_ipmp0  yes     ipmp0      --mbM--   up      ok       ok
```

The `link0_ipmp0` interface is no longer active but `link2_ipmp0` is now active.

8. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP address information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -an
ADDRESS          STATE  GROUP   INBOUND      OUTBOUND
::               down   ipmp0   --           --
192.168.0.113    up     ipmp0   link2_ipmp0  link2_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
192.168.0.112    up     ipmp0   link1_ipmp0  link2_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0
```

Note that the `link2_ipmp0` interface is being used for `INBOUND` and `OUTBOUND` traffic.

9. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the current probe information.

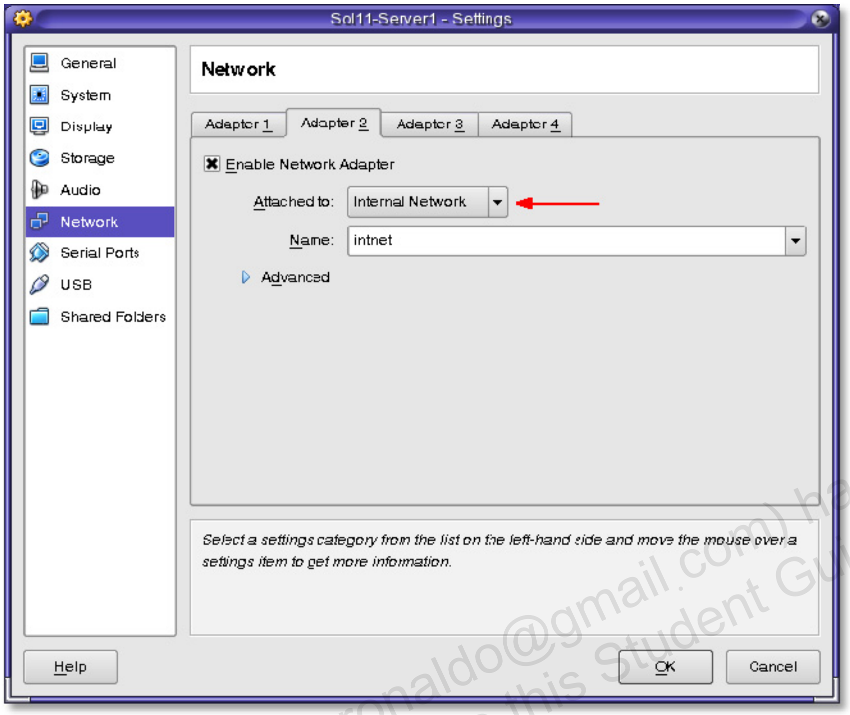
```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -pn
TIME      INTERFACE    PROBE  NETRTT  RTT     RTTAVG  TARGET
0.06s     link2_ipmp0  i163   0.26ms  0.49ms  0.33ms  192.168.0.111
0.90s     link1_ipmp0  i162   0.26ms  0.39ms  0.31ms  192.168.0.111
0.92s     link2_ipmp0  i164   0.19ms  0.36ms  0.34ms  192.168.0.111
0.49s     link0_ipmp0  i161   --      --      --      192.168.0.111
-0.49s    link0_ipmp0  i160   --      --      --      192.168.0.111
2.52s     link2_ipmp0  i165   0.23ms  0.39ms  0.34ms  192.168.0.111
2.74s     link1_ipmp0  i163   0.24ms  0.38ms  0.32ms  192.168.0.111
3.69s     link1_ipmp0  i164   0.25ms  0.45ms  0.34ms  192.168.0.111
2.31s     link0_ipmp0  i162   --      --      --      192.168.0.111
…
…
…
<Ctrl+C>
```

Note that the `link2_ipmp0` interface is actively probing targets.

10. Log in to the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine and ping the IPMP data IP addresses.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# ping 192.168.0.112
192.168.0.112 is alive
root@s11-desktop:~# ping 192.168.0.113
192.168.0.113 is alive
```

11. Return to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine and shut it down.
12. Open the VirtualBox Manager GUI and click the Settings utility for the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.
13. Under Network settings, select Adapter 2 and set the “Attached to:” field to Internal Network. Click OK to continue.



14. Start the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.
15. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user and `su` to `root`.
16. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP group information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP GROUPNAME STATE FDT     INTERFACES
ipmp0 ipmp0     ok    10.00s link0_ipmp0 link1_ipmp0 (link2_ipmp0)
```

Note that the `link2_ipmp0` interface has been placed back as standby and is inactive. This indicates that the failed interface is repaired.

17. Use the `ipmpstat` command to display the IPMP interface information.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -i
INTERFACE   ACTIVE  GROUP     FLAGS     LINK    PROBE     STATE
link2_ipmp0 no      ipmp0     is-----   up      ok        ok
link0_ipmp0 yes     ipmp0     -------   up      ok        ok
link1_ipmp0 yes     ipmp0     --mbM--   up      ok        ok
```

Task 5: Removing the IPMP Configuration

In this task, you remove the `ipmp0` IPMP group and return the network to its original configuration.

1. Remove all the subinterfaces from the `ipmp0` IPMP group and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm remove-ipmp -i link0_ipmp0 \
-i link1_ipmp0 -i link2_ipmp0 ipmp0
Dec 14 04:17:43 s11-server1 in.mpathd[113]: All IP interfaces in
group ipmp0 are now unusable.
```

Note: You may see other error messages due to the system being in an unstable state. You can ignore these messages.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
GROUP   GROUPNAME   STATE   FDT    INTERFACES
ipmp0   ipmp0       failed  --     --
```

2. Delete the `ipmp0` IPMP group.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-ipmp ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipmpstat -g
root@s11-server1:~#
```

3. Display the IP address that is currently configured in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ            TYPE     STATE   ADDR
lo0/v4             static   ok      127.0.0.1/8
link1_ipmp0/test   static   ok      192.168.0.143/24
link0_ipmp0/test   static   ok      192.168.0.142/24
link2_ipmp0/test   static   ok      192.168.0.144/24
lo0/v6             static   ok      ::1/128
```

Your display may be different.

4. Delete the test IP addresses and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-addr link0_ipmp0/test
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-addr link1_ipmp0/test
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-addr link2_ipmp0/test
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ            TYPE     STATE   ADDR
lo0/v4             static   ok      127.0.0.1/8
lo0/v6             static   ok      ::1/128
```

Your display may be different.

5. Delete the `link0_ipmp0`, `link1_ipmp0`, and `link2_ipmp0` IP interfaces. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-ip link0_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-ip link1_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm delete-ip link2_ipmp0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-if
IFNAME     CLASS    STATE    ACTIVE OVER
lo0        loopback ok       yes    --
```

6. Rename the data links to their original names and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm rename-link link0_ipmp0 net0
root@s11-server1:~# dladm rename-link link1_ipmp0 net1
root@s11-server1:~# dladm rename-link link2_ipmp0 net2
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK        CLASS     MTU    STATE       OVER
net1        phys      1500   unknown     --
net2        phys      1500   unknown     --
net0        phys      1500   unknown     --
net3        phys      1500   unknown     --
```

7. Restart the `svc:/network/physical:default` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm restart svc:/network/physical:default
```

8. Verify that the `net0` network interface has been configured correctly.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ           TYPE     STATE  ADDR
lo0/v4            static   ok     127.0.0.1/8
lo0/v6            static   ok     ::1/128
```

9. Reinstate the physical network interface.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-ip net0
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm create-addr –T static \
-a 192.168.0.100/24 net0/v4add1
```

10. Test the network interface by using the `ping` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ping 192.168.0.111
192.168.0.111 is alive.
```

11. Power-off the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine.

Practices for Lesson 6: Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network

Chapter 6

Practice Overview for Lesson 6

Practices Overview

According to your predeployment plan, it is time to evaluate the business scenario. On one company server, you are asked to create two independent virtual Oracle Solaris 11.1 systems (zones) where the company can maintain two separate customers' environments. Therefore, you create a zone called `grandmazone` for the vendor Grandma's Cookies and a zone called `choczone` for Assorted Chocolates Inc. When these customers need assistance, you can re-create their scenario in their respective zones and evaluate the issues.

Because you have only one physical interface on this server, you are asked to create two virtual network interfaces and assign one to each zone on a dedicated basis.

The key areas explored in the practices are:

- Configuring an Oracle Solaris 11.1 virtual network
- Configuring two zones to use VNICs
- Allocating resources to Oracle Solaris zones
- Managing resources on the virtual network interface
- Removing part of the virtual network

Note: Your command output displays may be different from the displays in the practice, for example, storage data, process IDs, and session-related and system-generated information.

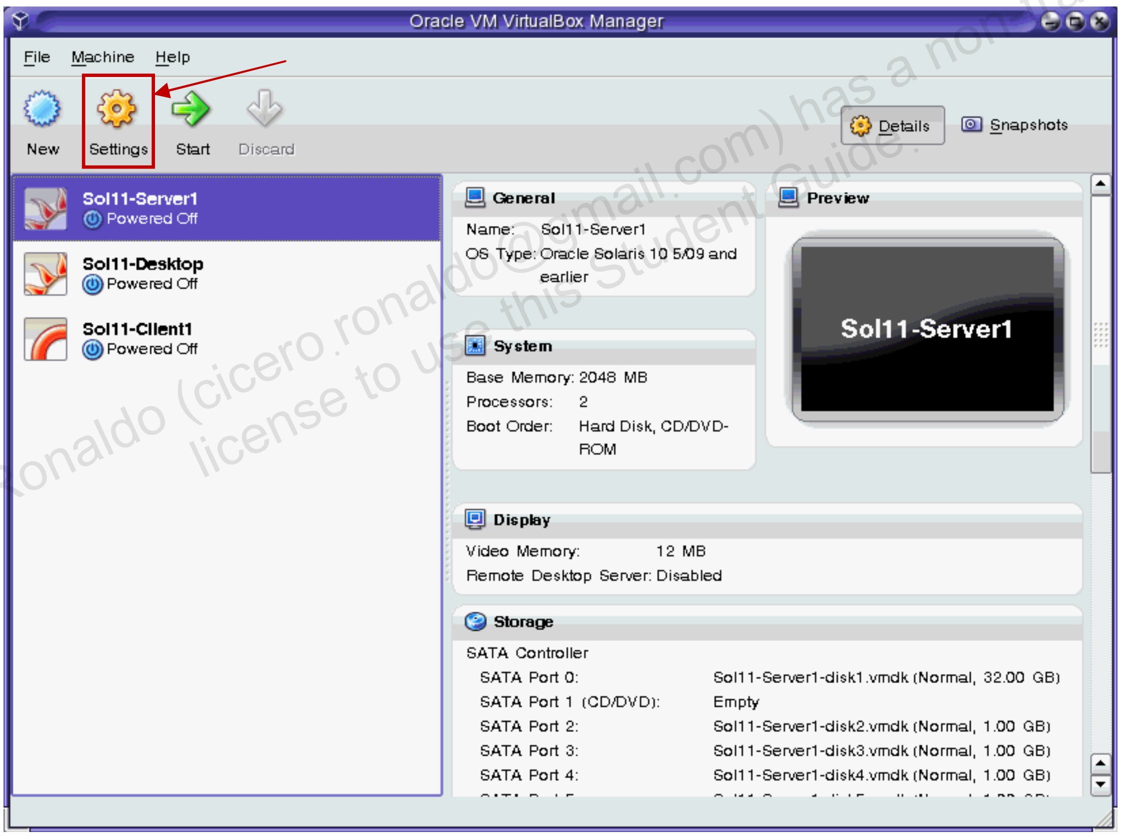
√	**Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist**
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
√	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
	Managing Services and Service Properties
	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Preparation

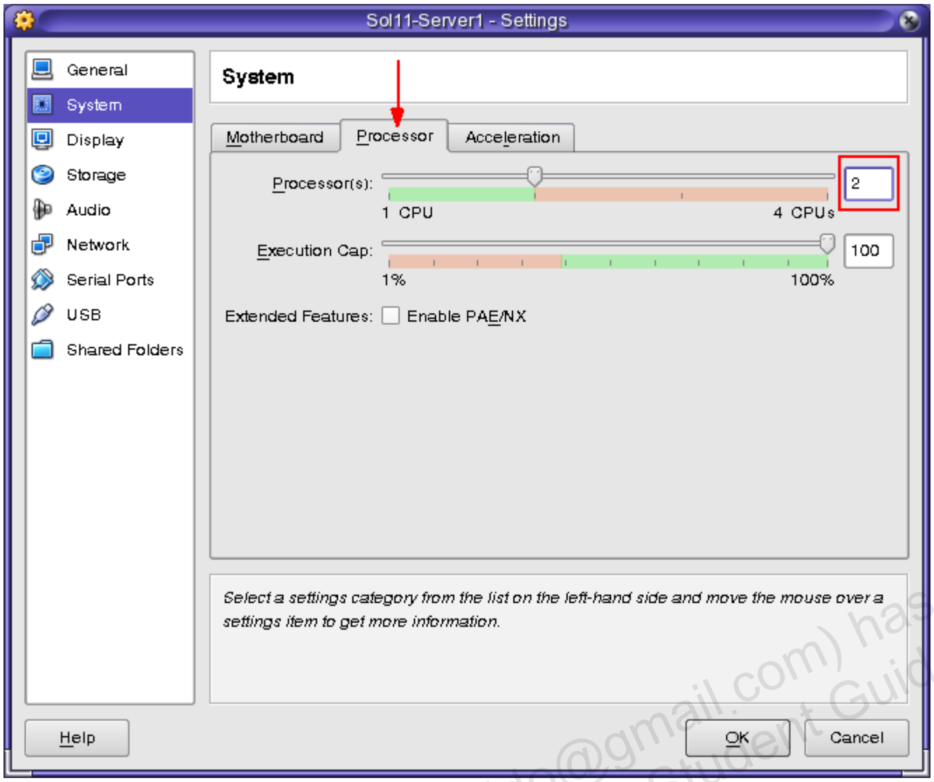
This practice requires the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine to have two CPUs so that resource pools can be configured accordingly. To ensure that the `Sol11-Sever1` virtual machine has two CPUs in place, follow these steps:

1. Shut down the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.

2. Open the VirtualBox Manager GUI and click the Settings utility for the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine.



3. Under the System settings, click the Processor tab and verify that the number of processors is 2. If not, change the number of processors to 2. Click OK to continue.



Practice 6-1: Creating an Oracle Solaris 11.1 Virtual Network

Overview

In this practice, you configure an Oracle Solaris 11.1 virtual network. To do this, you perform the following key tasks:

- Create a virtual network switch
- Create the virtual network interfaces
- Display the virtual network configuration

Task:

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
3. Run the `dladm` utility to create an etherstub named `stub0`. Confirm the creation of the etherstub by using the `show-link` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm create-etherstub stub0
root@s11-server1:~$ dladm show-link
LINK                CLASS     MTU    STATE    OVER
net1                phys      1500   unknown  --
net2                phys      1500   unknown  --
net3                phys      1500   unknown  --
net0                phys      1500   up       --
stub0               etherstub 9000   unknown  --
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Before you create the VNICs, you need to create a virtual network switch.

4. Use the `dladm` utility to create the `vnic0`, `vnic1`, and `vnic2` VNICs. Attach these VNICs to the etherstub `stub0`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm create-vnic -l stub0 vnic0
root@s11-server1:~# dladm create-vnic -l stub0 vnic1
root@s11-server1:~# dladm create-vnic -l stub0 vnic2
```

Here `vnic0` is required for the virtual switch `stub0`. The other VNICs are the virtual network interfaces that would be available for your use.

5. Show the results of the preceding step.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-vnic
LINK       OVER       SPEED  MACADDRESS        MACADDRTYPE     VID
vnic0      stub0      0      2:8:20:84:d:cb    random          0
vnic1      stub0      0      2:8:20:a:97:10    random          0
vnic2      stub0      0      2:8:20:4:ee:9     random          0
```

All three VNICs have been created as displayed. Notice that each VNIC has a MAC address created.

Now these VNICs are available for use as "physical" networks. You will use them in the following practice for the zones.

Practice 6-2: Creating Two Zones by Using VNICs

Overview

In this practice, you configure Oracle Solaris 11 zones and assign the virtual network interfaces created in the previous exercise. To do this, you perform the following key tasks:

- Configure two zones to use VNICs
- Display the zone configuration, including the interfaces

Task:

Perform the following steps to configure the zone named `grandmazone` and the zone named `choczone`:

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
3. Verify that the IPS publisher is configured correctly and is operational.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg publisher
PUBLISHER          TYPE     STATUS P   LOCATION
solaris            origin   online F   http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/

root@s11-server1:~# pkg search diffstat
INDEX           ACTION VALUE

PACKAGE
pkg.description set    The diff command compares files line by
line. Diffstat reads the output of the diff command and displays
a histogram of the insertions, deletions and modifications in
each file. Diffstat is commonly used to provide a summary of the
changes in large, complex patch files. Install diffstat if you
need a program which provides a summary of the diff command's
output. pkg:/text/diffstat@1.51-0.175.1.0.0.9.0
…
…
```

If the IPS publisher is configured incorrectly, change to an operational publisher. For example, if your current publisher is `http://pkg.oracle.com/solaris/release/`, you need to change it to `http://s11-server1.mydomain.com`. Run the following command:

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkg set-publisher –G '*' \
–g http://s11-server1.mydomain.com/ solaris
```

Refer to Practice 2: Managing the Image Packing System (IPS) and Packages for detailed IPS configuration.

The objective is to access the IPS repository on the local system to speed up package transfer during the zone installation steps.

4. Verify that an `rpool/zones` ZFS file system exists and is mounted as `/zones`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list rpool/zones
NAME          USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/zones    31K  22.6G    31K  /zones
```

If the `rpool/zones` ZFS file system does not exist, run the following command:

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create -o mountpoint=/zones rpool/zones
```

The root file systems for the zones will be stored in the `rpool/zones` file system.

5. Configure `grandmazone` and display the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone
Use 'create' to begin configuring a new zone.
zonecfg:grandmazone> create
create: Using system default template 'SYSdefault'
zonecfg:grandmazone> set zonepath=/zones/grandmazone
zonecfg:grandmazone> set autoboot=true
zonecfg:grandmazone> add net
zonecfg:grandmazone:net> set physical=vnic1
zonecfg:grandmazone:net> end
zonecfg:grandmazone> verify
zonecfg:grandmazone> commit
zonecfg:grandmazone> exit
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone info
zonename: grandmazone
zonepath: /zones/grandmazone
brand: solaris
autoboot: true
bootargs:
file-mac-profile:
pool:
limitpriv:
scheduling-class:
ip-type: exclusive
hostid:
fs-allowed:
net:
```

```
         address not specified
         allowed-address not specified
         configure-allowed-address: true
         physical: vnic1
         defrouter not specified
anet:
      linkname: net0
      lower-link: auto
      allowed-address not specified
      configure-allowed-address: true
      defrouter not specified
      allowed-dhcp-cids not specified
      link-protection: mac-nospoof
      mac-address: random
      mac-prefix not specified
      mac-slot not specified
      vlan-id not specified
      priority not specified
      rxrings not specified
      txrings not specified
      mtu not specified
      maxbw not specified
      rxfanout not specified
      vsi-typeid not specified
      vsi-vers not specified
      vsi-mgrid not specified
      etsbw-lcl not specified
      cos not specified
      pkey not specified
      linkmode not specified
```

6. Configure `choczone` and display the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z choczone
Use 'create' to begin configuring a new zone.
zonecfg:choczone> create
create: Using system default template 'SYSdefault'
zonecfg:choczone> set zonepath=/zones/choczone
zonecfg:choczone> set autoboot=true
zonecfg:choczone> add net
zonecfg:choczone:net> set physical=vnic2
zonecfg:choczone:net> end
zonecfg:choczone> verify
zonecfg:choczone> commit
```

```
zonecfg:choczone> exit
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z choczone info
zonename: choczone
zonepath: /zones/choczone
brand: solaris
autoboot: true
bootargs:
file-mac-profile:
pool:
limitpriv:
scheduling-class:
ip-type: exclusive
hostid:
fs-allowed:
net:
        address not specified
        allowed-address not specified
        physical: vnic2
        defrouter not specified
anet:
      linkname: net0
      lower-link: auto
      allowed-address not specified
      configure-allowed-address: true
      defrouter not specified
      allowed-dhcp-cids not specified
      link-protection: mac-nospoof
      mac-address: random
      mac-prefix not specified
      mac-slot not specified
      vlan-id not specified
      priority not specified
      rxrings not specified
      txrings not specified
      mtu not specified
      maxbw not specified
      rxfanout not specified
      vsi-typeid not specified
      vsi-vers not specified
      vsi-mgrid not specified
      etsbw-lcl not specified
      cos not specified
```

```
      pkey not specified
      linkmode not specified
```

7. Using the `zoneadm` command, display the configured zones.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -cv
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   - grandmazone      configured /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
   - choczone         configured /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
```

Both zones are in `configured` state. They need to be installed.

8. Using the `sysconfig` command, create a system configuration profile for `grandmazone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# sysconfig create-profile -o \
/opt/ora/data/gmconf.xml
```

When the system configuration tool appears, follow the directions on the screen and provide appropriate information from the following:

- Computer name: `grandmazone`
- Ethernet network configuration: `Manually`
- Network Interface: `vnic1`
- IP Address: `192.168.1.100`
- DNS: `Do not configure DNS`
- Alternate Name Service: `None`
- Time zone: *Use your local region.*
- Date and time: *Set to current date and time.*
- Root password: `oracle1`
- Your real name: `oraclegm`
- Username: `oraclegm`
- User password: `oracle1`
- Remove the Email address from the Support - Registration menu

After you have reviewed the information on the System Configuration Summary screen, select `F2_Apply`.

```
Exiting System Configuration Tool. Log is available at:
/system/volatile/sysconfig/sysconfig.log.1999
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Display the SC profile that you just created for `grandmazone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# more /opt/ora/data/gmconf.xml
<!DOCTYPE service_bundle SYSTEM
"/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/service_bundle.dtd.1">
```

```
<service_bundle type="profile" name="sysconfig">
  <service version="1" type="service" name="system/config-user">
    <instance enabled="true" name="default">
      <property_group type="application" name="root_account">
        <propval type="astring" name="login" value="root"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="password"
value="$5$/55TsRAF$zAq0.5T4w0GYsybpCZJ6xsCRAowN/F33CgJj.1Pbw11"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="type" value="role"/>
      </property_group>
      <property_group type="application" name="user_account">
        <propval type="astring" name="login" value="oraclegm"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="password"
value="$5$BQ8JDq4F$esjfDpd8CUtp627zOkRHbJD74W38Lo0F8aL/6v4sps1"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="type" value="normal"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="description"
value="grandma"/>
        <propval type="count" name="gid" value="10"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="shell"
value="/usr/bin/bash"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="roles" value="root"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="profiles" value="System
Administrator"/>
        <propval type="astring" name="sudoers" value="ALL=(ALL)
ALL"/>
      </property_group>
   </instance>
  </service>
  <service version="1" type="service" name="system/timezone">
    <instance enabled="true" name="default">
      <property_group type="application" name="timezone">
        <propval type="astring" name="localtime"
value="US/Mountain"/>
      </property_group>
    </instance>
  </service>
  <service version="1" type="service" name="system/environment">
…
…
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm -z grandmazone install –c
/opt/ora/data/gmconf.xml
```

The zone installation should take approximately 15 minutes.

9. Using the `sysconfig` command, create a system configuration profile for the `choczone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# sysconfig create-profile –o \
/opt/ora/data/chocconf.xml
```

When the system configuration tool appears, follow the directions on the screen and provide the appropriate information from the following:

- Computer name: `choczone`
- Ethernet network configuration: `Manually`
- Network Interface: `vnic2`
- IP Address: `192.168.1.200`
- DNS: `Do not configure DNS`
- Alternate Name Service: `None`
- Time zone: *Use your local region.*
- Date and time: *Set to current date and time.*
- Root password: `oracle1`
- Your real name: `oraclech`
- Username: `oraclech`
- User password: `oracle1`
- Remove the Email address from the Support - Registration menu

After you have reviewed the information on the System Configuration Summary screen, select `F2_Apply`.

```
Exiting System Configuration Tool. Log is available at:
/system/volatile/sysconfig/sysconfig.log.2987
root@s11-server1:~#

root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm -z choczone install –c \
/opt/ora/data/chocconf.xml
```

The zone installation should take approximately five minutes.

10. Show the results of the zone installations.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -iv
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   - grandmazone      installed  /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
   - choczone         installed  /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
```

Both zones are in `installed` state.

11. Boot the `grandmazone` and `choczone` zones and show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm -z grandmazone boot
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm -z choczone boot
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -v
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
```

```
   1 grandmazone      running    /zones/grandmazone          solaris   excl
   2 choczone         running    /zones/choczone             solaris   excl
```

Both zones have an ID and are in the `running` state.

12. Check the virtual network configuration in the global zone.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ            TYPE      STATE         ADDR
lo0/v4             static    ok            127.0.0.1/8
net0/v4add1        static    ok            192.168.0.100/24
lo0/v6             static    ok            ::1/128
```

In the global zone, no information is displayed about the links that you created. Why?
Because the VNICs exist at the link level. They would be visible by using the `dladm` commands that you used earlier.

13. Check the virtual network configuration in the `grandmazone` zone.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone
[Connected to zone 'grandmazone' pts/3]
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
root@grandmazone:~# ipadm show-addr
ADDROBJ            TYPE      STATE         ADDR
lo0/v4             static    ok            127.0.0.1/8
vnic1/v4           static    ok            192.168.1.100/24
lo0/v6             static    ok            ::1/128
vnic1/v6           addrconf  ok            fe80::8:20ff:fe0a:9710/10
```

14. Check the virtual network configuration in the `choczone` zone. It should be similar to `grandmazone`, except for the name of the network interface and the IP address.
15. From `grandmazone`, use the `ping` command to verify that the virtual network that connects `grandmazone` and `choczone` is operational.

```
root@grandmazone:~# ping 192.168.1.200
192.168.1.200 is alive
```

This demonstrates that you have connectivity with `choczone` because both zones are created on the same network.

16. Exit to the global zone.

Practice 6-3: Allocating Resources to Zones

Overview

In this practice, you allocate resources to the zones that you created in the previous practice. To accomplish this goal, you perform the following key tasks:

- Enable services for resource pools
- Configure a persistent resource pool
- Bind the zone to a persistent resource pool
- Remove the resource pool configuration
- Manage the virtual network data flow

Task 1: Enabling Resource Pool Services

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
3. Verify that the `poold` daemon and the `pool` services are running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pgrep -lf poold
root@s11-server1:~# svcs *pools*
STATE          STIME    FMRI
disabled       16:06:10 svc:/system/pools:default
disabled       16:05:55 svc:/system/pools/dynamic:default
```

Currently, all the pool services are disabled.

4. Verify that the `dynamic` service is dependent on the `default` pool service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs -d pools/dynamic
STATE          STIME    FMRI
disabled       16:06:10 svc:/system/pools:default
online         15:45:55 svc:/system/filesystem/local:default
```

5. Use the `svcadm` command to enable the pool services recursively. Confirm that the pool services and the `poold` daemon are up.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm enable -r pools/dynamic
root@s11-server1:~# svcs *pools*
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         16:08:10 svc:/system/pools:default
online         16:08:11 svc:/system/pools/dynamic:default
root@s11-server1:~# pgrep -lf poold
 8493 /usr/lib/pool/poold
```

6. Use the `pooladm` command to display the default resource pool configuration that is currently in use.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pooladm

system default
        string  system.comment
        int     system.version 1
        boolean system.bind-default true
        string  system.poold.objectives wt-load

        pool pool_default
                int     pool.sys_id 0
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default true
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_default

     pset pset_default
                int     pset.sys_id -1
                boolean pset.default true
                uint    pset.min 1
                uint    pset.max 65536
                string  pset.units population
                uint    pset.load 164
                uint    pset.size 2
                string  pset.comment

                cpu
                        int     cpu.sys_id 1
                        string  cpu.comment
                        string  cpu.status on-line

                cpu
                        int     cpu.sys_id 0
                        string  cpu.comment
                        string  cpu.status on-line
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Examine the default pool and the pset (processer set) configuration. Also note the number of CPUs available.

Task 2: Configuring a Persistent Resource Pool

1. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
2. Create the pool configuration file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls -l /etc/pool*
/etc/pool*: No such file or directory
```

Currently, the `pooladm.conf` file does not exist.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pooladm -s
```

Now you are saving the current pool configuration in the default file `/etc/pooladm.conf`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls -l /etc/pool*
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 1160 Dec 14 16:13 /etc/pooladm.conf
root@s11-server1:~# file /etc/pooladm.conf
/etc/pooladm.conf:      XML document
```

The file has been created for you and it is of type XML.

3. Display the contents of the pool configuration file by using the `more` command, so that you can examine its contents one page at a time.

```
root@s11-server1:~# more /etc/pooladm.conf
<?xml version="1.0"?>
<!DOCTYPE system PUBLIC "-//Sun Microsystems Inc//DTD Resource
Management All//EN"
"file:///usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/rm_pool.dtd.1">
<!--
Configuration for pools facility. Do NOT edit this file by hand -
use poolcfg(1) or libpool(3POOL) instead.
-->
<system ref_id="dummy" name="default" comment="" version="1"
bind-default="true">
  <property name="system.poold.objectives" type="string">wt-
load</property>
  <pool name="pool_default" active="true" default="true"
importance="1" comment="" res="pset_-1" ref_id="pool_0">
    <property name="pool.sys_id" type="int">0</property>
  </pool>
  <res_comp type="pset" sys_id="-1" name="pset_default"
default="true" min="1" max="65536" units="population" comment=""
ref_id="pset_-1">
    <property name="pset.load" type="uint">388</property>
    <property name="pset.size" type="uint">2</property>
```

```
    <comp type="cpu" sys_id="1" comment="" ref_id="cpu_1">
      <property name="cpu.status" type="string">on-
line</property>
…
…
```

The XML file contains the default pool configuration that you saved in step 2.

4. Use the `poolcfg` command to display the resource pool configuration from the `config` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -c info

system default
        string  system.comment
        int     system.version 1
        boolean system.bind-default true
        string  system.poold.objectives wt-load

        pool pool_default
                int     pool.sys_id 0
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default true
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_default
…
…
```

You will find that this display is exactly the same as in step 6 of the previous task. The purpose of displaying it again is that you can view it another time before you make modifications.

5. Create a `pset` called `pset_1to2` by using the `poolcfg` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -c 'create pset pset_1to2 \
(uint pset.min=1; uint pset.max=2)'
```

The pset is defined with a range of two CPUs (1–2). For instance, the kernel can use one or two CPUs based on the workload.

6. Use the `poolcfg` command to create a pool called `pool_gmzone` and associate it with the `pset_1to2` pset. Confirm whether the pool configuration file shows the current modification stamp.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -c 'create pool pool_gmzone \
(string pool.scheduler="FSS")'
```

While creating `pool_gmzone`, you also optionally indicate the Fair Share Scheduler (FSS) as your default scheduling class.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -c 'associate pool pool_gmzone \
(pset pset_1to2)'
root@s11-server1:~# ls -l /etc/pool*
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 1645 Dec 14 16:17 /etc/pooladm.conf
```

The pool configuration file has been modified as is evident from the time stamp.

7. Use the `poolcfg –c info` command to view the modified pool configuration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -c info | more

system default
        string  system.comment
        int     system.version 1
        boolean system.bind-default true
        string  system.poold.objectives wt-load

        pool pool_default
                int     pool.sys_id 0
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default true
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_default

        pool pool_gmzone
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default false
                string  pool.scheduler FSS
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_1to2

        pset pset_default
                int     pset.sys_id -1
                boolean pset.default true
                uint    pset.min 1
                uint    pset.max 65536
                string  pset.units population
                uint    pset.load 42
                uint    pset.size 2
                string  pset.comment
```

```
                cpu
                        int     cpu.sys_id 1
                        string  cpu.comment
                        string  cpu.status on-line

                cpu
                        int     cpu.sys_id 0
                        string  cpu.comment
                        string  cpu.status on-line

         pset pset_1to2
                int     pset.sys_id -2
                boolean pset.default false
                uint    pset.min 1
                uint    pset.max 2
                string  pset.units population
                uint    pset.load 0
                uint    pset.size 0
                string  pset.comment
root@s11-server1:~#
```

This is your new pool configuration. The pset, the pool, and the CPUs are all associated and displayed as you had specified. Note that your `pset_1to2` shows only one CPU currently. This is the minimum CPU; maximum CPUs are used as needed. Output may slightly differ.

8. Use the `pooladm -n –c` command to validate the configuration. Commit the changes by using the `-c` option.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pooladm -n –c
root@s11-server1:~# pooladm -c
```

9. Using the `poolcfg –dc info` command, display the current pool configuration that is in use.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -dc info | more

system default
        string  system.comment
        int     system.version 1
        boolean system.bind-default true
        string  system.poold.objectives wt-load

        pool pool_gmzone
                int     pool.sys_id 1
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default false
```

```
                string  pool.scheduler FSS
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_1to2

        pool pool_default
                int     pool.sys_id 0
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default true
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
…
…
```

This display should include your modifications; for instance, the `pool_gmzone` pool and its pset `pset_1to2` shown here.

10. Use the `poolstat` command to display all the active resource pools.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolstat -r all
 id pool                 type rid rset                  min  max size used load
  1 pool_gmzone          pset   1 pset_1to2               1    2    1 0.00 0.00
  0 pool_default         pset  -1 pset_default            1  66K    1 0.00 0.03
```

The output shows a default pool as well as your new pool.

Task 3: Binding the Zone to a Persistent Resource Pool

1. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
2. Use the `zoneadm` command to list the current state of the zones.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -iv
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   1 grandmazone      running    /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
   2 choczone         running    /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
```

The `choczone` and `grandmazone` zones are both up and running.

3. Because `grandmazone` needs the resource pool, allocate the pool to `grandmazone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone set pool=pool_gmzone
```

4. Confirm that the pool allocation is included in the zone configuration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone info | grep pool
pool: pool_gmzone
```

The `info` sub option displays the pool that is allocated to the `grandmazone` zone.

5. Reboot `grandmazone` to activate the resource pool binding. Check whether the zone has rebooted and is currently running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone init 6
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -iv
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   1 grandmazone      running    /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
   2 choczone         running    /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
```

Note that the reboot process might take a while to complete.

6. Log in to `grandmazone` to confirm the availability of the resource pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone
[Connected to zone 'grandmazone' pts/1]
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
```

7. Use the `poolcfg –dc info` command to view the modified pool configuration.

```
root@grandmazone:~# poolcfg -dc info

system default
        string  system.comment
        int     system.version 1
        boolean system.bind-default true
        string  system.poold.objectives wt-load

        pool pool_gmzone
                int     pool.sys_id 1
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default false
                string  pool.scheduler FSS
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_1to2

        pset pset_1to2
                int     pset.sys_id 1
                boolean pset.default false
                uint    pset.min 1
```

```
                 uint    pset.max 2
                 string  pset.units population
                 uint    pset.load 1827
                 uint    pset.size 1
                 string  pset.comment

                 cpu
                         int     cpu.sys_id 0
                         string  cpu.comment
                         string  cpu.status on-line
root@grandmazone:~#
```

This is your new pool configuration. The pset, the pool, and the CPUs are all associated as you had specified.

8. Exit `grandmazone`. Log in to `choczone`.

```
root@grandmazone:~# exit
logout

[Connection to zone 'grandmazone' pts/1 closed]
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin choczone
[Connected to zone 'choczone' pts/1]
Oracle Corporation      SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
```

9. Using the `poolcfg -dc info` command, display the current pool configuration.

```
root@choczone:~# poolcfg -dc info

system default
        string  system.comment
        int     system.version 1
        boolean system.bind-default true
        string  system.poold.objectives wt-load

        pool pool_default
                int     pool.sys_id 0
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default true
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_default

        pset pset_default
                int     pset.sys_id -1
                boolean pset.default true
```

```
                uint    pset.min 1
                uint    pset.max 65536
                string  pset.units population
                uint    pset.load 149
                uint    pset.size 1
                string  pset.comment

                cpu
                        int     cpu.sys_id 1
                        string  cpu.comment
                        string  cpu.status on-line
root@choczone:~# exit
```

Because you have not modified any pool configuration here, you will see the default resource pool configuration.

10. Exit the zone `choczone`.

Task 4: Removing the Resource Pool Configuration

1. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
2. Remove the pool configuration from `grandmazone` by using the `zonecfg` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone clear pool
```

3. Reboot `grandmazone`. Check the zone to see if it is up and running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone init 6
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -iv
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   2 choczone         running    /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
   3 grandmazone      running    /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
```

4. Log in to `grandmazone`. Use the `poolcfg –dc info` command to check the resource pool configuration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone
[Connected to zone 'grandmazone' pts/1]
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@grandmazone:~# poolcfg -dc info

system default
        string  system.comment
        int     system.version 1
        boolean system.bind-default true
```

```
        string  system.poold.objectives wt-load

        pool pool_default
                int     pool.sys_id 0
                boolean pool.active true
                boolean pool.default true
                int     pool.importance 1
                string  pool.comment
                pset    pset_default

        pset pset_default
                int     pset.sys_id -1
                boolean pset.default true
                uint    pset.min 1
                uint    pset.max 65536
                string  pset.units population
                uint    pset.load 1418
                uint    pset.size 1
                string  pset.comment
                cpu
                        int     cpu.sys_id 1
                        string  cpu.comment
                        string  cpu.status on-line
root@grandmazone:~#
```

Do you have any of the new resource pool information? *No, only the default resource pool configuration is available and displayed.*

5. Exit the `grandmazone` zone to return to the global zone.

```
root@grandmazone:~# exit
logout

[Connection to zone 'grandmazone' pts/1 closed]
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Note that the resource pool configuration is kept because it will be used again in subsequent practices.

Practice 6-4: Managing the Virtual Network Data Flow

Overview

Now that you have configured the resources for the zone, in this task, you manage the resources on the virtual network.

It was determined by the transaction load for the `choczone` zone that it requires up to 100MB/s of network bandwidth to receive and process the transaction on time. To accomplish this objective, you also increase the priority of transaction handling to high.

Tasks

1. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
2. Use `dladm show-link` to determine the state of all the links that are currently configured in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK                CLASS      MTU    STATE    OVER
net1                phys       1500   unknown  --
net2                phys       1500   unknown  --
net0                phys       1500   up       --
net3                phys       1500   unknown  --
stub0               etherstub  9000   unknown  --
vnic0               vnic       9000   up       stub0
vnic1               vnic       9000   up       stub0
grandmazone/vnic1   vnic       9000   up       stub0
vnic2               vnic       9000   up       stub0
choczone/vnic2      vnic       9000   up       stub0
choczone/net0       vnic       1500   up       net0
grandmazone/net0    vnic       1500   up       net0
```

The same VNICs are available that you created in Practice 6-1.

3. Use the `flowadm` command to create a flow called `http1`. Define this traffic to port 80. Display the results.

First create a new VNIC called `vnic3`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm create-vnic -l stub0 vnic3
root@s11-server1:~# flowadm add-flow -l vnic3 -a \
transport=tcp,local_port=80 http1

root@s11-server1:~# flowadm show-flow
FLOW        LINK                IPADDR              PROTO  LPORT   RPORT DSFLD
http1       vnic3               --                  tcp    80      --    --
```

In this case, the name of the new flow control is `http1` and it controls the `vnic3` configuration.

4. Use the `flowadm` command to set the maximum bandwidth of the flow property to 100 Mbps on the `http1` flow. Show the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# flowadm set-flowprop -p maxbw=100M http1
root@s11-server1:~# flowadm show-flowprop http1
FLOW         PROPERTY        VALUE          DEFAULT        POSSIBLE
http1        maxbw             100          --             --
```

Note: The bandwidth capping is demonstrated here for training purposes only. On the job, you may also have to manage the bandwidth by increasing or decreasing it. This would be based on the transactions running for your business application.

5. Use the `dladm` command to set the link property `priority` to `high` on the `vnic3` link. Display the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm set-linkprop -p priority=high vnic3
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-linkprop -p priority vnic3
LINK     PROPERTY        PERM VALUE          DEFAULT        POSSIBLE
vnic3    priority        rw   high           high           low,medium,high
```

Practice 6-5: Removing Part of the Virtual Network

Overview

In this task, you delete the network flow. Other virtual network components and the zones are not being deleted because they will be used in the subsequent practices.

Task

1. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.
2. Use the `flowadm` command to delete the flow. Display the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# flowadm show-flow
FLOW        LINK                IPADDR                   PROTO  LPORT   RPORT
DSFLD
http1       vnic3               --                       tcp    80      --
--
root@s11-server1:~# flowadm remove-flow -l vnic3
root@s11-server1:~# flowadm show-flow
```

3. Use the `dladm` command to display and delete the links. Display the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK                CLASS      MTU    STATE    OVER
net1                phys       1500   unknown  --
net2                phys       1500   unknown  --
net0                phys       1500   up       --
net3                phys       1500   unknown  --
stub0               etherstub  9000   unknown  --
vnic0               vnic       9000   up       stub0
vnic1               vnic       9000   up       stub0
grandmazone/vnic1   vnic       9000   up       stub0
vnic2               vnic       9000   up       stub0
choczone/vnic2      vnic       9000   up       stub0
choczone/net0       vnic       1500   up       net0
grandmazone/net0    vnic       1500   up       net0
vnic3               vnic       9000   up       stub0
```

4. Use the `dladm` command to delete the `vnic3` link.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm delete-vnic vnic3
```

5. Use the `dladm` command to display the links.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dladm show-link
LINK                CLASS      MTU    STATE    OVER
net1                phys       1500   unknown  --
net2                phys       1500   unknown  --
net0                phys       1500   up       --
net3                phys       1500   unknown  --
stub0               etherstub  9000   unknown  --
vnic0               vnic       9000   up       stub0
vnic1               vnic       9000   up       stub0
grandmazone/vnic1   vnic       9000   up       stub0
vnic2               vnic       9000   up       stub0
choczone/vnic2      vnic       9000   up       stub0
choczone/net0       vnic       1500   up       net0
grandmazone/net0    vnic       1500   up       net0
```

This configuration will be used in future practices.

Practices for Lesson 7: Managing Services and Service Properties

Chapter 7

Practice Overview for Lesson 7

Practices Overview

In these practices, you are given a plan for configuring, restoring, and maintaining the Oracle Solaris 11.1 services and getting acquainted with various service profiles.

According to the predeployment plan, the time has come for you to evaluate the Service Management Facility (SMF) services. You have been tasked with working with multiple scenarios to test the SMF functionality. In support of your business applications, in certain cases, you may have to create, troubleshoot, and modify the services and the service profiles.

The key areas explored in the practices are:

- Configuring SMF services
- Restoring and recovering a service
- Working with service profiles

Note: In many cases, your command output displays may be different from the displays in the practice. Some examples would be storage, process IDs, and session-oriented and system-generated information.

Check your progress. You just completed the zones lesson and now you are working with Services.

√	**Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist**
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
√	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
√	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
	Managing Services and Service Properties
	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Practice 7-1: Configuring SMF Services

Overview

As part of the predeployment testing plan, you are given the task of creating a simple service that can also assist you in modifying a service. You will call this new service `crmsvc`, which has been designed to monitor the CRM processes. In addition, you will also modify environment variables and properties of actively running services. For example, you will determine any memory leaks caused by the running programs and turning on the TCP trace. In this practice, you work with SMF services in the following areas:

- Creating and exporting a service
- Modifying a service
- Changing an environment variable for a service
- Changing a property for a service controlled by `inetd`

Task 1: Creating and Exporting a Service

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine.
2. Log in to the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Verify that the user `sstudent` exists. If not, create the user `sstudent` and then confirm that the user has been created.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# tail /etc/passwd
nobody:x:60001:60001:NFS Anonymous Access User:/:
noaccess:x:60002:60002:No Access User:/:
nobody4:x:65534:65534:SunOS 4.x NFS Anonymous Access User:/:
aiuser:x:60003:60001:AI User:/:
pkg5srv:x:97:97:pkg(5) server UID:/:
oracle:x:60004:10:Oracle:/home/oracle:/usr/bin/bash
…
…
…
sstudent:x:60008:10:super student:/export/home/sstudent:/bin/sh
```

Note: The user `sstudent` has been created so that you can create a new service as a non-administrative user. Because you must have the appropriate privileges, you will perform some steps as an administrative user.

If `sstudent` does not exist, run the following command:

```
root@s11-desktop:~# useradd -u 60008 -g 10 –d \
/export/home/sstudent -m -s /bin/bash -c "super student" sstudent
```

6. As the `sstudent` user, create the `smf` directory in your home directory. Create a file called `monitor.crm` with the contents shown below. Finally, grant the execution permission on the script.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# su - sstudent
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
sstudent@s11-desktop:~$ pwd
/export/home/sstudent
sstudent@s11-desktop:~$ mkdir smf
sstudent@s11-desktop:~$ ls
local.cshrc  local.login  local.profile  smf
sstudent@s11-desktop:~$ cd smf
sstudent@s11-desktop:~/smf$ vi monitor.crm
sstudent@s11-desktop:~/smf$ cat monitor.crm
#!/bin/sh
echo "crm monitoring service" > /export/home/sstudent/smf/crmrep

sstudent@s11-desktop:~/smf$ chmod 774 monitor.crm
```

After creating the script, you granted the execute permission on the script so it can be executed.

7. Exit the `sstudent` user account to return to the administrative user to configure the service. Use the `svccfg` command to copy an existing service to serve as a template.

```
root@s11-desktop:~/smf$ exit
root@s11-desktop:~# svccfg export system/utmp > \
/var/svc/manifest/site/crmsvc.xml
```

Instead of starting the manifest file from scratch, you will have this template to work with.

8. Edit the `crmsvc.xml` file to match the contents displayed. Your file should match these contents *exactly*, so make sure to delete all unnecessary tags from the template.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# vi /var/svc/manifest/site/crmsvc.xml
root@s11-desktop:~# more /var/svc/manifest/site/crmsvc.xml
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<!DOCTYPE service_bundle SYSTEM
'/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/service_bundle.dtd.1'>
<service_bundle type='manifest' name='crmsvc'>
  <service name='site/crmsvc' type='service' version='1'>
```

```
    <create_default_instance enabled='false'/>
    <single_instance/>
```

[Make sure you delete the dependency and dependent tags.]

```
    <exec_method name='start' type='method'
exec='/export/home/sstudent/smf/monitor.crm'
timeout_seconds='60'/>
    <exec_method name='stop' type='method' exec=':true'
timeout_seconds='60'/>
```

[Make sure you delete the stability value and template tags and their associated information]

```
    <property_group name='startd' type='framework'>
           <propval name='duration' type='astring'
value='transient'/>
    </property_group>
  </service>
</service_bundle>
```

After editing, the manifest for your test service should look like this. Review the contents for any XML tags missing, and any typing errors. Notice that `exec_method` matches up with your program.

9. Validate the manifest file by using the `svccfg validate` command.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svccfg validate /var/svc/manifest/site/crmsvc.xml
```

Unless there are any spelling mistakes, the `validate` command should run fine.

10. By using the `svcadm restart` command, make the manifest available to SMF.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart system/manifest-import
```

Because the service you created is in an SMF standard manifest directory, you can just restart the manifest service. This will import the newly created service. You don't have to import the service individually. This is the recommended practice.

11. Display the service by using the `svcs` command. If it is disabled, enable it by using the `svcadm` command.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
disabled       13:14:07 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm enable /site/crmsvc
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         13:43:36 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
```

Is your service enabled and online? *Yes.*

12. Now verify that the command `echo` was executed by using the new service.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# cat /export/home/sstudent/smf/crmrep
crm monitoring service
```

The action you had specified in the `monitor.crm` was executed by bringing up the service resulting in echoing the above string to the `crmrep` file. This is how you can execute a program as a service.

Task 2: Modifying Service Configuration

Overview

The following tasks will introduce the various types of service modifications, for example, the service environment variables, network service properties and process to service conversion.

In this practice, you will work with SMF services in the following areas:

- Changing an environment variable for a service
- Changing a property of a service controlled by `inetd`

Task 2A: Change an Environment Variable for a Service

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the virtual machine Sol11-Desktop as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. By using the `svcs` command, check to see if the `cron` service is running.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs system/cron
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online          6:52:52 svc:/system/cron:default
```

The `cron` service is up and running.

6. Use the `svccfg` command to modify the memory environment variables for the `cron` service.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svccfg -s system/cron:default setenv \
UMEM_DEBUG default
root@s11-desktop:~# svccfg -s system/cron:default setenv \
LD_PRELOAD libumem.so
```

The two environment variables are configured for the `cron` service for debugging the memory leaks while the `cron` service is executing a program.

7. Refresh and restart the `cron` service by using the `svcadm` command to make the changes effective.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm refresh system/cron
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart system/cron
```

8. Verify that the environment variables have been modified.

Note: Use the *back tick* key on the keyboard to enclose the `pgrep` command. Look for the back tick below the tilde (~) key on the keyboard.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# pargs -e `pgrep -f /usr/sbin/cron`
1593: /usr/sbin/cron
…
…
envp[10]: LD_PRELOAD=libumem.so
…
…
envp[19]: UMEM_DEBUG=default
envp[20]: A__z="*SHLVL
```

Your display may be slightly different.

Are the configured environment variables displayed in the output? *Yes,* `envp[10]` *and* `envp[19]` *show the new values.*

This command is helpful when you need to debug or monitor programs for memory leaks.

In order to find the memory leaks in the programs, you need knowledge of Oracle Solaris debugging tools like `mdb`. The debugging topic is covered in more specialized course like Oracle Solaris 11 Performance Management.

Task 2B: Change a Property for an `inetd`-Controlled Service

1. Verify that the `Sol11-Server1` virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Log in to the virtual machine Sol11-Server1 as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. By using the `inetadm` command, list the properties of the `telnet` service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# inetadm -l svc:/network/telnet:default
SCOPE    NAME=VALUE
         name="telnet"
         endpoint_type="stream"
         proto="tcp6"
         isrpc=FALSE
         wait=FALSE
         exec="/usr/sbin/in.telnetd"
         user="root"
default  bind_addr=""
default  bind_fail_max=-1
default  bind_fail_interval=-1
default  max_con_rate=-1
default  max_copies=-1
default  con_rate_offline=-1
default  failrate_cnt=40
default  failrate_interval=60
default  inherit_env=TRUE
default  tcp_trace=FALSE
default  tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default  connection_backlog=10
default  tcp_keepalive=FALSE
```

Is the `tcp_trace` property for `telnet` enabled? *No, because it says `false` in the entry.*

5. Use the `inetadm` command to enable `tcp_trace` on the `telnet` service. Confirm the action.

```
root@s11-server1:~# inetadm -m svc:/network/telnet:default tcp_trace=TRUE
root@s11-server1:~# inetadm -l svc:/network/telnet:default
SCOPE    NAME=VALUE
         name="telnet"
…
```

```
…
…
default   inherit_env=TRUE
          tcp_trace=TRUE
default   tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default   connection_backlog=10
default   tcp_keepalive=FALSE
```

Why do we need to turn on `tcp_trace`? *So the `telnet` connections can be monitored .*

Is the `tcp_trace` enabled now for the `telnet` service? *Yes.*

6. Start verifying the `tcp_trace` by using the `telnet` command to connect to the `localhost` and the `exit` command to log out.

   Note: If you are unable to connect, the telnet service may be down. You can bring it up by using the command:

   `# svcadm enable network/telnet`

```
root@s11-server1:~# telnet localhost
Trying ::1…
Connected to s11-server1.
Escape character is '^]'.
login: oracle
Password: oracle1
Last login: Thu Dec 15 07:08:43 on s11-desktop
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
oracle@s11-server1:~# exit
logout
Connection to s11-server1 closed by foreign host.
```

Because you created the connection, you can check if the `tcp_trace` property is logging the message.

7. Check whether any message was logged in the `/var/adm/messages` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tail -1 /var/adm/messages
Dec 15 08:27:57 s11-server1 inetd[787]: [ID 317013 daemon.notice]
telnet[13363] from 127:0:0:1 57330
```

Note: `-1` in the command is the digit *one*.

By using the `tail` command with `-1` option, you display the last or most current message.

Is the `telnet` connection logged? *Yes.*

8. Confirm the entry in `/etc/syslog.conf`, which is configured to log this message.

```
root@s11-server1:~# grep /var/adm/messages /etc/syslog.conf
*.err;kern.debug;daemon.notice;mail.crit    /var/adm/messages
...
...
```

Notice that the `daemon.notice` facility messages are configured to be written to `/var/adm/messages`. Who is writing the trace messages to `/var/adm/messages`?
The `syslogd` daemon.

Task 2C: Modify the Manifest for a Service

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the `S11-Desktop` virtual machine.
2. Log in to the virtual machine `S11-Desktop` as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. By using the `svcs` command, check the status of the `crmsvc` service you created earlier in Practice 7-1, Task 1. Disable the service and display the result.

   Note: If the `crmsvc` service should appear in a maintenance state when you run the `svcs crmsvc` command the first time, disable the service, refresh it, and then enable it to bring it back into an online state.

```
root@s11-desktop~# svcs crmsvc
online         10:04:44 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm disable crmsvc
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
disabled       10:07:59 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
```

Notice that at this time `crmsvc` is disabled.

6. Use the `cd` command to switch to `sstudent`'s `smf` directory. Display the directory's contents.

```
root@s11-desktop~# cd /export/home/sstudent/smf;ls
crmrep   monitor.crm
```

7. By using the cp command, copy the file monitor.crm as monitor1.crm. By using the vi editor, modify the contents of monitor1.crm as indicated below.

```
root@s11-desktop:/home/sstudent/smf# cp monitor.crm monitor1.crm
root@s11-desktop:/home/sstudent/smf# vi monitor1.crm
root@s11-desktop:/home/sstudent/smf# cat monitor1.crm
#!/bin/sh
echo "here is your modified crm monitoring service" >
/export/home/sstudent/smf/crmrep
```

Your modified service should record this new message in the crmrep file.

8. Use the cd command to switch to the manifest directory. Edit the crmsvc.xml to refer to monitor1.crm instead of monitor.crm.

```
root@s11-desktop:/home/sstudent/smf# cd /var/svc/manifest/site
root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# ls
crmsvc.xml
root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# vi crmsvc.xml
root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# grep monitor crmsvc.xml
    <exec_method name='start' type='method'
exec='/export/home/sstudent/smf/monitor1.crm'
timeout_seconds='60'/>

root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# cd
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

9. By using the svcadm command, restart the manifest-import service. Enable crmsvc and confirm the service is online.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart manifest-import
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart crmsvc
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm enable crmsvc
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
online         10:27:25 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
```

The service is online.

10. By using the cat command, display the new contents of the report.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# cat /export/home/sstudent/smf/crmrep
here is your modified crm monitoring service
```

So what was the purpose of modifying the service manifest? To demonstrate that these are the steps you take to modify an existing service. The modified service is executing a different program monitor1.crm.

Practice 7-2: Working with Service Profiles

Overview

In this practice, you evaluate the current service profile. Based on your business application environment, you want to make sure that only the required services are enabled at the system startup. In addition, you learn how to limit remote access to your host by using a network profile. The following activities are addressed:

- Creating an SMF profile
- Applying an SMF profile
- Changing the services and their configuration by using the `netservices` command

Tasks

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1     September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Use the `svcs` command to check the current status of `cups/scheduler` service.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs cups/scheduler
online     16:48:33 svc:/application/cups/scheduler:default
```

Currently, the service is enabled.

6. Use the command `svccfg extract` to copy the currently active SMF profile into a file called `profile.xml`.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svccfg extract > profile.xml
```

7. By using the `vi` editor, modify the extracted file `profile.xml`. Change the enabled property of `application/cups/scheduler` service from `true` to `false`.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# vi profile.xml
root@s11-desktop:~# more profile.xml
<?xml version='1.0'?>
<!DOCTYPE service_bundle SYSTEM
'/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/service_bundle.dtd.1'>
<service_bundle type='profile' name='profile'>
…
…
…
```

```
<service name='application/cups/scheduler' type='service'
version='0'>
    <create_default_instance enabled='false'/>
    <single_instance/>
  </service>
...
...
...
```

After you apply the configuration, this `cups/scheduler` service will be disabled.

8. Use the `svccfg` command to apply the modified profile.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svccfg apply profile.xml
```

Note: Allow the OS to apply the changes. It will take a few minutes.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs cups/scheduler
disabled       16:48:33 svc:/application/cups/scheduler:default
```

Notice the `cups/scheduler` service is disabled.

Refresh and then enable the service by using the `svcadm enable` command. As a last step, verify that the service is now back online.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm refresh cups/scheduler
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm enable cups/scheduler
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs cups/scheduler
online       16:50:15 svc:/application/cups/scheduler:default
```

The service is once again enabled.

Practice 7-3: Restoring and Recovering a Service

Overview

Your predeployment test plan calls for various SMF service scenarios. This practice covers most of the repair and restore scenarios when a service or the SMF repository has become defective. The following areas will be addressed in this practice:

- Restoring a service in the `maintenance` state
- Reverting to a previous SMF snapshot
- Repairing a corrupt repository
- Debugging a service that is not starting

Task 1: Restore a Service in the `maintenance` State

Now you look at a service which will be in the `maintenance` state. In a training scenario like this, you will make a spelling error in the service manifest file, and observe the service going into the `maintenance` state and correct the problem.

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Use the command `svcs` to check if the `crmsvc` service is running.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         10:27:25 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
```

6. By using `vi` (or any other UNIX editor), delete the last letter 'm' from the file name `monitor1.crm` in the `method` block as indicated. Save the changes.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# cd /var/svc/manifest/site
root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# vi crmsvc.xml
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE service_bundle SYSTEM
'/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/service_bundle.dtd.1'>
<service_bundle type='manifest' name='crmsvc'>
  <service name='site/crmsvc' type='service' version='1'>
    <create_default_instance enabled='false'/>
    <single_instance/>
    <exec_method name='start' type='method'
exec='/export/home/sstudent/smf/monitor1.cr'
…
```

```
…
…
root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# cd
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

This will create a problem because the `crmsvc` program will not be able to process the misspelled argument ‘`monitor1.cr`’. This scenario is realistic and representative of real world because typing errors can happen.

7. See if you can bring this service up. Refresh the `manifest-import` service, which will automatically refresh the `crmsvc` configuration.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart manifest-import
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         10:27:25 svc:/site/crmsvc:default

root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart crmsvc

root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
maintenance    10:27:25 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm clear crmsvc
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
maintenance    10:27:25 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
```

When trying to clear the `maintenance` state, it still stays in the existing `maintenance` state. When the Service Management Facility (SMF) places a service in the `maintenance` mode, SMF is unable to bring it up. A system administrator has to debug the problem.

8. Use the command `svcs` with the `–xv` option and that will give you some debugging details.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs -xv crmsvc
svc:/ site/crmsvc:default (?)
 State: maintenance since December 15, 2012 08:22:41 PM  UTC
Reason: Start method failed repeatedly, last exited with status
127
   See: http://support.oracle.com/msg/SMF-8000-KS
   See: /var/svc/log/site-crmsvc:default.log
Impact: This service is not running
```

Here you see the details about the `crmsvc` service. The display tells you that there is a problem with the start method as it exited with status 127. You can get more details in the service log.

```
root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# tail /var/svc/log/site-
crmsvc:default.log

/usr/sbin/sh[1:exec: /export/home/student/smf/monitor1.cr: not
found
Dec 15 08:22:41 Method “start” exited with status 127.
…
```

So now you can see the details in the log and it spells out that it cannot execute your script `monitor1.cr`

9. Edit the `crmsvc.xml` file to correct the typing error. Refer to previous steps for editing content.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# cd /var/svc/manifest/site
root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# vi crmsvc.xml
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<!DOCTYPE service_bundle SYSTEM
'/usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/service_bundle.dtd.1'>
<service_bundle type='manifest' name='crmsvc'>
  <service name='site/crmsvc' type='service' version='1'>
    <create_default_instance enabled='false'/>
    <single_instance/>
    <exec_method name='start' type='method'
exec='/export/home/sstudent/smf/monitor1.crm'
…
…
…

root@s11-desktop:/var/svc/manifest/site# cd
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

Here you edit the `crmsvc.xml` file and correct the spelling error from ‘`monitor1.cr`’ to ‘`monitor1.crm`’ in the method block.

10. Now can you bring up the service? Look at what needs to be done.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart manifest-import
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
maintenance    11:27:25 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm clear crmsvc
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs crmsvc
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online       11:27:25 svc:/site/crmsvc:default
```

Now the `crmsvc` service is up and you are back in business.

This completes the steps for managing a service in the `maintenance` state.

Task 2: Revert to a Previous SMF Snapshot

This task introduces you to multiple snapshots of a service. When a service is corrupted, it is really the current instance of that service which is non-operational. In that case, one of the options would be to revert to a previous functional snapshot and correcting the problem with that instance of the service. Because you have seen multiple corrupted services, only the steps you need to take to revert to a previous instance of a service are demonstrated to you here.

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the `Sol11-Desktop` virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Take a look at the `console-login` service. Assume it is in the `maintenance` state.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs console-login:default
online         18:15:32 svc:/system/console-login:default
```

Currently, the service is running. You assume it is in the `maintenance` state and you would like to revert to an earlier snapshot .

6. Use the `svccfg` utility to list the `console-login` service snapshots. Select the `previous` snapshot.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svccfg
svc:> select system/console-login:default
svc:/system/console-login:default> listsnap
previous
running
start
svc:/system/console-login:default> revert previous
svc:/system/console-login:default> quit
```

In this step you are reverting to the previous snapshot.

7. Use the `svcadm` commands to `refresh` and `restart` the service. Confirm it is up and running.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm refresh system/console-login:default
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm restart system/console-login:default
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs console-login:default
online         18:15:32 svc:/system/console-login:default
```

The `refresh` option will update the SMF repository with the configuration information from the previous snapshot. After you do the refresh, you can start the service.

Task 3: Repair a Corrupt Repository

This task introduces you to multiple versions of the SMF repository, which contains all of the services. In Task 2, you reverted to a previous snapshot of one service. Here you are reverting to a functional version of the whole repository. This procedure is useful if multiple services are corrupted and it is deemed more efficient to revert to an earlier functional repository. Because you have seen multiple corrupted services, here you are shown only the steps you need to take to revert to a previous functional version of the repository.

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1        September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Take a look at the whole SMF service repository. If you have corrupted service/s, SMF would not be able to bring them up and offer you the relevant functionality, for example, the `ssh` and `telnet` services. In that case, you restore the SMF repository to an earlier version. Take a look at the commands.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# cd /lib/svc/bin
root@s11-desktop:/lib/svc/bin# ./restore_repository

See http://support.oracle.com/msg/SMF-8000-MY for more
information on the use of
this script to restore backup copies of the smf(5) repository.

If there are any problems which need human intervention, this
script will
give instructions and then exit back to your shell.
./restore_repository[71]: [: /: arithmetic syntax error
The following backups of /etc/svc/repository.db exist, from
oldest to newest:

boot-20121219_030802
boot-20121220_035620
boot-20121220_213924
boot-20121221_073919
manifest_import-20121222_031207
manifest_import-20121222_041727
manifest_import-20121222_051215
manifest_import-20121222_051642
```

```
The backups are named based on their type and the time what they
were taken.
Backups beginning with "boot" are made before the first change is
made to
the repository after system boot.  Backups beginning with
"manifest_import"
are made after svc:/system/manifest-import:default finishes its
processing.
The time of backup is given in YYYYMMDD_HHMMSS format.

Please enter either a specific backup repository from the above
list to
restore it, or one of the following choices:

      CHOICE              ACTION
      ----------------    ----------------------------------------
-----
      boot         restore the most recent post-boot backup
      manifest_import    restore the most recent manifest_import
backup
      -seed-              restore the initial starting repository
(All
                      customizations will be lost, including those
                      made by the install/upgrade process.)
      -quit-              cancel script and quit

Enter response [boot]: boot-20121221_073919
```

Note: Your display may be different.

In this step you are reverting to the service repository version created on December 21, 2012. A new version is created by SMF after any service configuration.

6. The system will respond as follows. If you would like to revert to the specified version, enter `yes`, otherwise `no`. In this training scenario, you enter `no`.

```
…
…
After confirmation, the following steps will be taken:

svc.startd(1M) and svc.configd(1M) will be quiesced, if running.
/etc/svc/repository.db
    -- renamed --> /etc/svc/repository.db_old_20121222_052726
/etc/svc/repository-boot-20121221_073919
    -- copied --> /etc/svc/repository.db
and the system will be rebooted with reboot(1M).

Proceed [yes/no]? no
```

```
Exiting...
root@s11-desktop:/lib/svc/bin# cd
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

Now you should be able to reboot the system successfully and by default you will be in multi-user mode.

Task 4: Debug a Service That Is Not Starting (Optional)

So far, you have seen multiple faces of service corruption. During debugging other issues earlier, you have seen the command `svcs -xv`. However, it is demonstrated here more as a commonly used reference tool even though it is a slight repetition. The purpose is two-fold: first to demonstrate how to temporarily take a service out of operation; second to quickly view some debugging information.

1. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Use the command `svcs` to check if the `cron` service is running.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs cron
STATE           STIME    FMRI
online          7:35:56  svc:/system/cron:default
```

6. Now take a look at a service which will be in the `disabled` state. In a training scenario like this, you will take the `cron` service offline temporarily and evaluate the debugging process.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm disable -t cron
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs cron
STATE           STIME    FMRI
disabled       11:04:39  svc:/system/cron:default
```

Can you guess what is the purpose of the `-t` option? *It temporarily disables the specified service.*

7. Use the svcs command to obtain details about the problems with the cron service.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs -xv cron
svc:/system/cron:default (clock daemon (cron))
 State: disabled since December 15, 2012 11:04:39 PM UTC
Reason: Temporarily disabled by an administrator.
   See: http://Support.coracle.com/msg/SMF-8000-1S
   See: man -M /usr/share/man -s 1M cron
   See: man -M /usr/share/man -s 1 crontab
   See: /var/svc/log/system-cron:default.log
Impact: This service is not running.
```

The -xv option gives sufficient details for you to be able to determine the problem. For additional reference, a URL is listed for a knowledge article on this topic as well as the service log. Because the details tell you the reason, in this case, you can try to enable the service.

8. Enable the cron service by using the command svcadm. Confirm that the service is back up online.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm enable cron
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs cron
STATE           STIME    FMRI
online         11:06:14 svc:/system/cron:default
```

Is the cron service online? *Yes, it is.*

Practices for Lesson 8: Configuring Privileges and Role Based Access Control

Chapter 8

Practice Overview for Lesson 8

Practices Overview

In these practices, you will be presented with a plan for managing Oracle Solaris 11.1 privileges and role-based access control.

According to the predeployment test plan, you are asked to assess the user, process, and program privileges. First, you determine the available privileges and for various situations you determine the required privileges. Similarly, you will create new roles and the rights profiles. In addition, you will assign the roles, profiles, and authorizations to current and new users. You also establish the RBAC policy. The key areas explored in the practices are:

- Delegating privileges to users and processes
- Configuring role-based access control (RBAC)

Note: Your command output displays may be different from the displays in the practice. Some examples would be storage, process IDs, and session and system-generated information.

Now you check your progress. You just completed the services lesson and are now working with privileges and RBAC.

√	**Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist**
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
√	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
√	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
√	Managing Services and Service Properties
√	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting Software Failures

Practice 8-1: Delegating Privileges to Users and Processes

Overview

As part of the predeployment testing plan, you are tasked with managing privileges for users and processes. In this practice, you work in the following areas:

- Examining the process privileges
- Managing user privileges

Task 1: Examining the Process Privileges

This task covers the following activities:

- Determining the privileges on a process
- Determining privileges needed by a program
- Displaying the description of a privilege

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the user `oracle`. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Use the `ppriv` command to view the privileges for the current shell.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps
  PID TTY         TIME CMD
13924 pts/1       0:00 ps
13919 pts/1       0:00 su
13920 pts/1       0:00 bash

root@s11-server1:~# ppriv $$
13920: -bash
flags = <none>
     E: all
     I: basic
     P: all
     L: all
```

What does the `$$` symbol represent? It represents the *current shell, which is* `bash`.

Do you know what the `E`, `I`, `P`, and `L` privilege sets are? `E` *for effective,* `I` *for inherited,* `P` *for permitted, and* `L` *for limit sets.*

5. Use the `ppriv -v` command to view the privileges.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ppriv -v $$ | more
2411: -bash
flags = <none>
      E:
contract_event,contract_identity,contract_observer,cpc_cpu,dtrace
_ker
nel,dtrace_proc,dtrace_user,file_chown,file_chown_self,file_dac_e
xecute,file_dac
_read,file_dac_search,file_dac_write,file_downgrade_sl,file_flag_
set,file_link_a
ny,file_owner,file_read,file_setid,file_upgrade_sl,file_write,gra
phics_access,gr
aphics_map,ipc_dac_read,ipc_dac_write,ipc_owner,net_access,net_bi
ndmlp,net_icmpa
ccess,net_mac_aware,net_mac_implicit,net_observability,net_privad
dr,net_rawacces
s,proc_audit,proc_chroot,proc_clock_highres,proc_exec,proc_fork,p
roc_info,proc_l
ock_memory,proc_owner,proc_priocntl,proc_session,proc_setid,proc_
taskid,proc_zon
e,sys_acct,sys_admin,sys_audit,sys_config,sys_devices,sys_dl_conf
ig,sys_flow_con
fig,sys_ip_config,sys_ipc_config,sys_iptun_config,sys_linkdir,sys
_mount,sys_net_
config,sys_nfs,sys_ppp_config,sys_res_bind,sys_res_config,sys_res
ource,sys_share
,sys_smb,sys_suser_compat,sys_time,sys_trans_label,win_colormap,w
in_config,win_d
ac_read,win_dac_write,win_devices,win_dga,win_downgrade_sl,win_fo
ntpath,win_mac_
read,win_mac_write,win_selection,win_upgrade_sl
      I:
file_link_any,file_read,file_write,net_access,proc_exec,proc_fork
,pro
c_info,proc_session
…
…
…
```

Using the `-v` option, you get a wealth of information.

6. Determine the process ID of the `lockd` daemon by using the `pgrep` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pgrep -fl lockd
12382 /usr/lib/nfs/lockd
12383 lockd_kproc
```

What is the PID of the `lockd` daemon? *12382*

Do you know the function of `lockd`? *It is one of the NFS daemons and manages NFS share locking.*

Note: If the above process is not available, use `mapid` instead of `lockd`. If `lockd` or `mapid` do not display any output, run the following commands and then run the `lockd` or `mapid` command again:

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set \
share=name=docs,path=/export/home/docs,prot=nfs \
rpool/export/home/docs
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set sharenfs=on rpool/export/home/docs
```

You will need to turn off sharing after you have completed the practice.

7. Use the `ppriv` command by using the PID.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ppriv -v 12382
12382: /usr/lib/nfs/lockd
flags = PRIV_AWARE
      E: file_read,file_write,net_access,sys_nfs
      I: none
      P: file_read,file_write,net_access,sys_nfs
      L: none
```

Notice that the `lockd` process is `PRIV_AWARE`.

What is the significance of the `PRIV_AWARE` flag? *The process is able to reduce its privileges*.

8. Repeat step 8, this time without the `-v` option.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ppriv 12382
12382:     /usr/lib/nfs/lockd
flags = PRIV_AWARE
      E:
basic,!file_link_any,!proc_exec,!proc_fork,!proc_info,!proc_sessi
on,sys_nfs
      I:
basic,!file_link_any,!file_read,!file_write,!net_access,!proc_exe
c,!proc_fork,!proc_info,!proc_session
      P:
basic,!file_link_any,!proc_exec,!proc_fork,!proc_info,!proc_sessi
on,sys_nfs
```

```
     L:
basic,!file_link_any,!file_read,!file_write,!net_access,!proc_exe
c,!proc_fork,!proc_info,!proc_session
```

Determine the two differences between the outputs in the two steps.

a) The `-v` option displays summarized output (not verbose).

b) With no `-v` option, the `ppriv` command also displays the disallowed privileges.

9. Using the `ppriv -vl` command, display the privilege definition.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ppriv -vl file_link_any
file_link_any
     Allows a process to create hardlinks to files owned by a
uid different from the process' effective uid.
```

Now you have it. Try to display the definition of another privilege. Would this command work for any privileges? *Yes.*

Task 2: Managing User Privileges

This task covers the following activities:

- Determining the privilege needed by a user
- Debugging the privileges
- Assigning privileges to a user/role
- Limiting privileges of a user/role
- Determining the privileged commands you can use

Task 2A: Using the File Ownership Privilege

This task covers the following activities:

- Determining the privilege needed by a user
- Debugging the privileges
- Assigning privileges to a user/role

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11    11.1      September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Verify that the users `jholt` and `jmoose` have user accounts. If they do not, create user accounts and password for them as indicated below. These accounts will be used for working with the privileges.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cat /etc/passwd
...
...
jholt:x:60005:10:john holt:/export/home/jholt:/bin/bash
jmoose:x:60006:10:jerry moose:/export/home/jmoose:/bin/bash
...
root@s11-server1:~#
```

If the user accounts to do not exist, run this series of commands:

```
root@s11-server1:~# useradd -u 60005 -g 10 -d /export/home/jholt
-m -c "john holt" -s /bin/bash jholt
80 blocks

root@s11-server1:~# passwd jholt
New Password: oracle1
Re-enter new Password: oracle1
passwd: password successfully changed for jholt

root@s11-server1:~# useradd -u 60006 -g 10 -d /export/home/jmoose
-m -c "jerry moose" -s /bin/bash jmoose
80 blocks
root@s11-server1:~# passwd jmoose
New Password: oracle1
Re-enter new Password: oracle1
passwd: password successfully changed for jmoose
```

5. Use the `su - jmoose` command to switch to `jmoose`'s account. Create a directory called `docs`. Then exit to the administrator account.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jmoose
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ pwd
/export/home/jmoose
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ mkdir docs
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ ls -ld /export/home/jmoose/docs
drwxr-xr-x   2 jmoose   staff          2 Dec 15 03:00
/export/home/jmoose/docs
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Since `jmoose` created the `docs` directory, he is the owner.

6. Use the `su - jholt` command to switch to `jholt`'s account.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$
```

The reasons for logging in as `jholt` are:

a) To determine the privileges needed by `jholt`

b) To grant him the privileges as the administrative user.

7. Check your privileges as the `jholt` account. Then use the `ls -ld` command to display the owner of the `docs` directory in `jmoose`'s home directory.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ id
uid=60005(jholt) gid=10(staff)

jholt@s11-server1:~$ ppriv $$
12447:  -bash
flags = <none>
      E: basic
      I: basic
      P: basic
      L: all
```

Because you are logged in as `jholt`, the current process shows your privileges, which could be different for different accounts based on the privileges granted by the system administrator.

Why would you want to use the `-v` option with this command? *Issue the command and analyze the difference. Refer to Task 1 if you need help.*

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ls -ld /export/home/jmoose/docs
drwxr-xr-x   2 jmoose   staff          2 Dec 15 03:00
/export/home/jmoose/docs
jholt@s11-server1:~$
```

Before you change the ownership of the `docs` directory in `jmoose`'s home directory, you want to make sure `jmoose` is (of course!) the owner.

8. As the `jholt` user, use the `chown` command to change the ownership of the `docs` directory to `jholt`.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ chown jholt /export/home/jmoose/docs
chown: /export/home/jmoose/docs: Not owner
```

As expected, since `jholt` does not have the privilege to execute the `chown` command, a message is displayed.

9. Use the `ppriv` command in debug mode to determine what privilege is missing.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ppriv -eD chown jholt \
/export/home/jmoose/docs
chown[1737]: missing privilege "file_chown" (euid = 60005,
syscall = 56) for "/export/home/jmoose/docs" needed at
zfs_setattr+0xbb3
chown: /export/home/jmoose/docs: Not owner
```

Can you tell which privilege is needed by `jholt`? *The `file_chown` privilege. The `-D` option is for debugging.*

10. Use the `truss` command to determine what privilege is missing.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ truss chown jholt /export/home/jmoose/docs
execve("/usr/bin/chown", 0x08047E58, 0x08047E68)  argc = 3
sysinfo(SI_MACHINE, "i86pc", 257)          = 6
mmap(0x00000000, 32, PROT_READ|PROT_WRITE, MAP_PRIVATE|MAP_ANON,
-1, 0) = 0xFEFB0000
mmap(0x00000000, 4096, PROT_READ|PROT_WRITE,
MAP_PRIVATE|MAP_ANON, -1, 0) = 0xFEFA0000…
…
…
lstat64("/export/home/jmoose/docs", 0x08064010)  = 0
chown("/export/home/jmoose/docs", 60005, -1)     Err#1 EPERM
[file_chown]
fstat64(2, 0x08046D90)                     = 0
chown: write(2, " c h o w n :  ", 7)            = 7
open("/usr/lib/locale/en_US.UTF-8/LC_MESSAGES/SUNW_OST_OSLIB.mo",
O_RDONLY) Err#2 ENOENT
/export/home/jmoose/docswrite(2, " / e x p o r t / h o m e"..,
24)   = 24
```

```
: write(2, " :  ", 2)                         = 2
Not ownerwrite(2, " N o t   o w n e r", 9)        = 9

write(2, "\n", 1)                             = 1
_exit(1)
```

The truss utility is also used for debugging purposes. As you see this utility also reports that the file_chown privilege is missing (although not in plain English text).

11. Exit the jholt account and as the administrator, use the usermod command to grant jholt the file_chown privilege. Confirm the entry in the /etc/user_attr file.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -K defaultpriv=basic,file_chown jholt
root@s11-server1:~# grep jholt /etc/user_attr
jholt::::defaultpriv=basic,file_chown
```

Here you have granted jholt the file_chown privilege. Note that you are only interested in granting him the file_chown privilege but you must include the basic privilege also because the defaultpriv keyword will replace all his privileges with the specified privileges. This file is used to record any special privileges to users or roles. This facility is covered in detail in the next practice.

12. Log back in to jholt's account. Now issue that chown command. Confirm the ownership of the docs directory.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation      SunOS 5.11      11.1        September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$ chown jholt /export/home/jmoose/docs
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ls -ld /export/home/jmoose/docs
drwxr-xr-x   2 jholt    staff          2 Dec 15 03:00
/export/home/jmoose/docs
```

Success! You were able to successfully change the ownership to jholt.

Return the ownership of the docs directory to jmoose, so that you can use this setup again.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ chown jmoose /export/home/jmoose/docs
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ls -ld /export/home/jmoose/docs
drwxr-xr-x   2 jmoose   staff          2 Dec 15 03:00
/export/home/jmoose/docs
```

Task 2B: Limiting the Privileges of a User

The following activities are covered in this task:

- Limiting the privileges of a user
- Determining the privileged commands you can use

1. In the `jholt` account, use the `ps -ef` command to display the current processes.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ps -ef | more
     UID   PID  PPID   C    STIME TTY         TIME CMD
    root     0     0   0 01:07:24 ?           0:04 sched
    root     5     0   0 01:07:22 ?           0:07 zpool-rpool
    root     1     0   0 01:07:25 ?           0:00 /usr/sbin/init
    root     2     0   0 01:07:25 ?           0:00 pageout
    root     3     0   0 01:07:25 ?           0:05 fsflush
    root     6     0   0 01:07:25 ?           0:00 intrd
    root     7     0   0 01:07:25 ?           0:00 vmtasks
    root   427     1   0 01:08:57 ?           0:00
/sbin/dhcpagent
    root    10     1   0 01:07:27 ?           0:05
/lib/svc/bin/svc.startd
    root    12     1   0 01:07:27 ?           0:36
/lib/svc/bin/svc.configd
  daemon    75     1   0 01:07:52 ?           0:00
/lib/crypto/kcfd
  netadm    96     1   0 01:07:57 ?           0:00
/lib/inet/ipmgmtd
    root   114     1   0 01:08:07 ?           0:00
/lib/inet/in.mpathd
   dladm    43     1   0 01:07:43 ?           0:00
/usr/sbin/dlmgmtd
  netcfg    48     1   0 01:07:45 ?           0:00
/lib/inet/netcfgd


…
…
…
```

At this time, with the current privileges, are you able to view any processes started by others? *Yes.*

2. Exit the `jholt` account and as the administrator, launch a Korn shell and use the `usermod` command to limit `jholt`'s privileges.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# ps
  PID TTY          TIME CMD
14050 pts/1        0:00 ps
```

```
13919 pts/1       0:00 su
13920 pts/1       0:00 bash

root@s11-server1:~# usermod -K defaultpriv=basic,!proc_info jholt
-bash: !proc_info: event not found
```

As the message says, the bash shell is not aware of the `!proc_info event`. Switch to `ksh`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ksh
root@s11-server1:~# ps
  PID TTY         TIME CMD
14051 pts/1       0:00 ksh
14056 pts/1       0:00 ps
13919 pts/1       0:00 su
13920 pts/1       0:00 bash

root@s11-server1:~# usermod -K defaultpriv=basic,!proc_info jholt
root@s11-server1:~# grep jholt /etc/user_attr
jholt::::defaultpriv=basic,!proc_info
```

Exit to Bash shell, which is your default shell.

```
root@s11-server1:~# exit
root@s11-server1:~# ps
  PID TTY         TIME CMD
14067 pts/1       0:00 ps
13919 pts/1       0:00 su
13920 pts/1       0:00 bash
```

You have taken away the process view privilege from `jholt`. Can you guess if he can display the processes for other users? *No.*

3. Return to the `jholt` account and use the `ps -ef` command to display the current processes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ps -ef
     UID   PID  PPID   C    STIME TTY         TIME CMD
   jholt 12501 12500   0 04:34:45 pts/2       0:00 -bash
   jholt 12505 12501   0 04:34:49 pts/2       0:00 ps -ef
jholt@s11-server1:~$
```

Are you able to view processes for other users? *No.*

Why? *Because the administrator has taken away the `proc_info` privilege.*

Did you remember to log back in to `jholt`'s account? *Yes.*

Why? *To make the new privileges effective.*

How would you find out if `jholt` still has the privilege to execute the `chown` command?

a) issue the `chown` command on a file as demonstrated earlier
OR

b) check `jholt`'s privileges

4. Exit the `jholt` account and as the administrator, replace the original privileges for the `jholt` account.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -K defaultpriv=basic jholt
root@s11-server1:~# grep jholt /etc/user_attr
jholt:::defaultpriv=basic
```

Now John Holt should be able to use all the privileges included in the basic rights profile. You will learn more about profiles in the next practice.

Can you determine the privileges included in the basic privilege set? *Yes, use the `ppriv` command.*

5. Now you are curious. You want to know what privileges John Holt has. As John Holt, use the commands `profiles`, `roles`, and `auths` to view the privileges.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation      SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$ profiles
     Basic Solaris User
     All
jholt@s11-server1:~$ roles
No roles
jholt@s11-server1:~$ auths
solaris.admin.wusb.read,solaris.mail.mailq,solaris.network.autoco
nf.read
```

If any special profiles, roles, or individual authorizations are assigned to John Holt, they will be displayed here.

These facilities are part of Role-Based Access Control, which will be covered in the next practice.

6. Use the `profiles -l` command to see more details of the privileges assigned to John Holt.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ profiles -l
      Basic Solaris User
        auths=solaris.mail.mailq,solaris.device.mount.removable,sol
aris.admin.wusb.read
        profiles=All
            /usr/bin/cdrecord.bin
privs=file_dac_read,sys_devices,proc_lock_memory,proc_priocntl,ne
t_privaddr
            /usr/bin/readcd.bin
privs=file_dac_read,sys_devices,net_privaddr
            /usr/bin/cdda2wav.bin
privs=file_dac_read,sys_devices,proc_priocntl,net_privaddr
        All
            *
```

These are the same profiles you displayed in the previous step. However, the privileges connected to the profiles are also displayed.

Exit the `jholt` account.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Practice 8-2: Configuring Role-Based Access Control

Overview

Your predeployment test plan calls for using the Role-Based Access Control (RBAC) functionality of Oracle Solaris 11.1. By using RBAC, you can create the roles and assign them specific privileges or authorizations. You can then assign these roles to the appropriate users. This saves resources because you do not have to assign privileges to individual users. In this practice, you will work with a role `sdown` and `Shut` profile with authorization to execute the `shutdown` command. The following areas are covered in this practice:

- Managing roles and profiles
- Configuring a rights profile
- Working with individual authorizations
- Creating a system-wide RBAC policy

Task 1: Manage Roles and Profiles

This task covers the following activities:

- Creating a role
- Creating or changing a rights profile
- Assigning a rights profile to a role (added)
- Assigning a role to a user
- Assuming a role
- Restricting an administrator to explicitly assigned rights

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Use the `roleadd` command to add a role called `sdown` for shutdown. Using the `passwd` command, create a password for the `sdown` role.

```
root@s11-server1:~# roleadd -u 3000 -g 10 -m -d \
/export/home/sdown sdown
80 blocks
root@s11-server1:~# passwd sdown
New Password: sdown123
Re-enter new Password: sdown123
passwd: password successfully changed for sdown
```

A new role is added and the password created. Use the password `sdown` so it can be remembered easily.

5. Verify the entries created in various files.

```
root@s11-server1:~# grep sdown /etc/passwd
sdown:x:3000:10::/export/home/sdown:/usr/bin/pfbash
root@s11-server1:~# getent user_attr | grep sdown
sdown:::type=role;profiles=All;roleauth=role
```

As you can see, an entry in `/etc/passwd` was created very much like an entry for a new user. Notice the default shell.
An entry was also made in `/etc/user_attr` for `sdown`, which is marked as a role.

6. Use the '`profiles`' command to create a '`Shut`' profile that, when assigned to user, could shut down a system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# profiles -p Shut
profiles:Shut> set desc="Able to shutdown the system"
profiles:Shut> add cmd=/usr/sbin/shutdown
profiles:Shut:shutdown> set uid=0
profiles:Shut:shutdown> end
profiles:Shut> commit
profiles:Shut> exit
root@s11-server1:~# getent prof_attr | grep Shut
Shut:::Able to shutdown the system:
root@s11-server1:~# getent exec_attr | grep Shut
Shut:solaris:cmd:::/usr/sbin/shutdown:uid=0
```

Here you created a new rights profile called `Shut`.

7. Use the `rolemod` command to assign the profile `Shut` to the `sdown` role.

```
root@s11-server1:~# rolemod -P Shut sdown
root@s11-server1:~# getent user_attr | grep sdown
sdown:::type=role;profiles=Shut;roleauth=role
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Note the profiles entry in the `/etc/user_attr` file.

8. Create a user called `abell` and assign her the `sdown` role. Create a password. Confirm that an entry is made in the `/etc/user_attr` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# useradd -u 60020 -g 10 -m –d \
/export/home/abell -s /bin/bash -R sdown -c "anna bell" abell
80 blocks
root@s11-server1:~# passwd abell
New Password: oracle1
Re-enter new Password: oracle1
passwd: password successfully changed for abell
root@s11-server1:~# getent user_attr | grep abell
```

```
abell:::: roles=sdown
```

Note the entry in `/etc/user_attr` for Anna Bell with the `sdown` role. Why? *Because you assigned her the role `sdown`.*

9. Now, log in to the `abell` account and use the `shutdown` command to reboot the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - abell
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
abell@s11-server1:~$ /usr/sbin/shutdown -i 6 -g 0
/usr/sbin/shutdown:  Only root can run /usr/sbin/shutdown
```

As expected, Anna Bell does not have the privileges to shut down the system.

10. Execute the `profiles` and `roles` commands to determine Anna's privileges.

```
abell@s11-server1:~$ profiles
      Basic Solaris User
      All
abell@s11-server1:~$ roles
sdown
```

Anna has been assigned the `sdown` role. When? *When you created her account*

11. Log in with the `sdown` role and use the `init` command to shut down the system.

```
abell@s11-server1:~$ su sdown
Password: sdown123
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.0       November 2011
sdown@s11-server1:~$ id
uid=3000(sdown) gid=10(staff)
sdown@s11-server1:~$ /usr/sbin/init 6
init: unable to open /dev/fb to load the shutdown image
bootadm: you must be root to run this command
Must be super-user
```

Why can't Anna reboot the system? *She is not allowed the privilege of using the `init` command.*

12. Using the `profiles -l` command, obtain the privileged commands that Anna can use.

```
sdown@s11-server1:~$ profiles -l
       Shut
           /usr/sbin/shutdown         uid=0
       Basic Solaris User
      auths=solaris.mail.mailq,solaris.network.autoconf.read,sola
ris.admin.wusb.read
      profiles=All
```

```
          /usr/bin/cdrecord.bin
privs=file_dac_read,sys_devices,proc_lock_memory,proc_priocntl,ne
t_privaddr
          /usr/bin/readcd.bin
privs=file_dac_read,sys_devices,net_privaddr
          /usr/bin/cdda2wav.bin
privs=file_dac_read,sys_devices,proc_priocntl,net_privaddr
      All
          *
sdown@s11-server1:~$
```

Does the `sdown` role have the privilege to execute the `init` command? *No.*

Can this role execute the `shutdown` command? *Yes, as part of the `Shut` profile.*

13. Now use the `shutdown` command to attempt to bring down the system. To save time, respond with `n` when prompted to continue shutting down.

```
sdown@s11-server1:~$ /usr/sbin/shutdown -i 6 -g 0

Shutdown started.    Fri Dec 16 05:24:30 AM MDT

Do you want to continue? (y or n):  n
Broadcast Message from root (pts/2) on s11-desktop Fri Dec 16 20
05:24:38...
False Alarm:  The system s11-server1 will not be brought down.
Shutdown aborted.
sdown@s11-server1:~$
```

Were you able to execute the `shutdown` command? *Yes.*

14. Use the `profiles` command to display the profiles assigned to the `sdown` role.

```
sdown@s11-server1:~$ profiles
      Shut
      Basic Solaris User
      All
```

The `sdown` profile has three profiles assigned: `Shut`, `Basic Solaris User`, and `All`.

15. Log out of the `sdown` role and Anna's account.

```
sdown@s11-server1:~$ exit
exit
abell@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
```

16. Now you want to delete the `Shut` profile from the profiles assigned to the `sdown` role. Use the `rolemod` command to delete the profile.

```
root@s11-server1:~# rolemod -P "Basic Solaris User,All,Stop" \
sdown
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Referring to the output in Step 15, by using the Stop profile, you are taking away the `Shut` profile from `sdown`. This command is especially useful if you have many (for example, 15) profiles assigned to a role and you want to limit the role to only a few profiles.

17. Log in to Anna Bell's account, assume the `sdown` role, and attempt to use the `shutdown` command as before.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - abell
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
abell@s11-server1:~$ su sdown
Password: sdown123
sdown@s11-server1:~$ /usr/sbin/shutdown -i 6 -g 0
/usr/sbin/shutdown:  Only root can run /usr/sbin/shutdown
sdown@s11-server1:~$ exit
exit
```

You are back to where Anna Bell cannot issue the `shutdown` command by using the `sdown` role. If you display the current profiles assigned to `sdown`, you see only the remaining profiles.

```
abell@s11-server1:~$ profiles
          Basic Solaris User
          All
```

Exit Anna Bell's user account.

```
abell@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Task 2: Assign Profiles Directly to a User

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.

3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Use the `usermod` command to assign the profile `"File System Management"` to an existing user `jholt`. Verify the entry in the `/etc/user_attr` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -P "File System Management" jholt
root@s11-server1:~# getent user_attr | grep jholt
jholt:::profiles=File System Management;defaultpriv=basic
```

Yes, it is there.

5. Log in to the `jholt` account. Use the `profiles` command to display the current profiles assigned.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$ profiles
          File System Management
          SMB Management
          VSCAN Management
          SMBFS Management
          Shadow Migration Monitor
          ZFS File System Management
          Basic Solaris User
          All
```

Along with the File System Management, other dependent profiles are also assigned as default.

6. Using the `mkdir` command, attempt to create a directory in the root file system.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ mkdir /holtdir
mkdir: Failed to make directory "/holtdir"; Permission denied
```

Can `jholt` create a directory in the root file system? *No.*

7. Use the `pfexec` command to execute the `mkdir` command. Confirm the directory creation.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ pfexec mkdir /holtdir
jholt@s11-server1:~$ cd /;ls -l | grep holt
drwxr-xr-x   2 root     staff          2 Dec 16 15:20 holtdir

jholt@s11-desktop:/$ exit
logout
```

The `pfexec` command temporarily enables you to assume the privileges in the profile assigned to you.
This demonstrates the direct assignment of a profile and usage of the profile privileges.

Task 3: Assign Authorization Directly to a User

1. Double-click the Sol11-Server1 icon to launch the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Temporarily log in to the `jmoose` account. Use the `crontab` command to determine if you have the authorization to display the `crontab` contents for the superuser.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jmoose
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ crontab -l root
crontab: you must be super-user to access another user's crontab
file
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~#
```

As expected, the `jmoose` account doesn't have the authorization to list the `root`'s `crontab` file.

5. Using the `usermod` command, assign Jerry Moose the authorization for job administration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -A solaris.jobs.admin jmoose
root@s11-server1:~# getent user_attr |grep jmoose
jmoose::::auths=solaris.jobs.admin
root@s11-server1:~# auths jmoose | grep jobs
solaris.admin.wusb.read,solaris.jobs.admin,solaris.mail.mailq,sol
aris.network.autoconf.read
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Does Jerry Moose have the right authorizations now? *Yes.*

6. Log in as `jmoose` and issue the `crontab` command now.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jmoose
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ crontab -l root
#ident     "%Z%%M%    %I%   %E% SMI"
#
# Copyright 2007 Sun Microsystems, Inc.  All rights reserved.
# Use is subject to license terms.
#
#
# The root crontab should be used to perform accounting data
collection.
#
#
10 3 * * * /usr/sbin/logadm
15 3 * * 0 [ -x /usr/lib/fs/nfs/nfsfind ] &&
/usr/lib/fs/nfs/nfsfind
30 3 * * * [ -x /usr/lib/gss/gsscred_clean ] &&
/usr/lib/gss/gsscred_clean
jmoose@s11-desktop:~$
```

Can Jerry Moose access the `crontab` file for the `root` account now? *Yes*.

7. Log out of Jerry Moose's account to return to the superuser account. Take away the authorization from Jerry Moose. Confirm that he doesn't have the authorization anymore.

```
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -A "" jmoose
root@s11-server1:~# getent user_attr | grep jmoose
jmoose::::auths=
root@s11-server1:~# su - jmoose
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ crontab -l root
```

```
crontab: you must be super-user to access another user's crontab
file
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
```

Jerry Moose cannot access the superuser's `crontab` file.

This task demonstrates the direct assignment of an authorization and usage of that authorization.

Task 4: Create a System-wide RBAC Policy

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Temporarily log in to the `jmoose` account. Use the `ppriv` command to display the privilege sets.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jmoose
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
2011jmoose@s11-server1:~$ ppriv $$
12687:  -bash
flags = <none>
      E: basic
      I: basic
      P: basic
      L: all
```

5. Use the `ps` command to display all the processes.

```
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ ps -A -o user -o pid -o comm | more
  USER   PID COMMAND
    root     0 sched
    root     5 zpool-rpool
    root     1 /usr/sbin/init
    root     2 pageout
    root     3 fsflush
    root     6 intrd
    root     7 vmtasks
    root   427 /sbin/dhcpagent
```

```
    root    10 /lib/svc/bin/svc.startd
    root    12 /lib/svc/bin/svc.configd
  daemon    75 /lib/crypto/kcfd
  netadm    96 /lib/inet/ipmgmtd
    root   114 /lib/inet/in.mpathd
   dladm    43 /usr/sbin/dlmgmtd
  netcfg    48 /lib/inet/netcfgd
    root  2493 su
  oracle  2356 /usr/lib/clock-applet
    root   119 /usr/lib/pfexecd
  daemon  1840 /usr/lib/nfs/nfs4cbd
    root   756 lockd_kproc
  oracle  2309 nautilus…
…
…
```

Can you display the processes for any user? *Yes.*

6. Exit the `jmoose` account and as the administrator, modify the `/etc/security/policy.conf` file as indicated below.

```
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# vi /etc/security/policy.conf
root@s11-server1:~# grep PRIV_DEFAULT /etc/security/policy.conf
# There are two different settings; PRIV_DEFAULT determines the
default
# Similarly, PRIV_DEFAULT=basic,!file_link_any takes away only
the
#PRIV_DEFAULT=basic
PRIV_DEFAULT=basic,!proc_info,!proc_session
…
…
```

This file establishes a system-wide policy. You are denying a non-administrative user the privilege to look at the processes of other users.

Now reboot the system to have the policy take effect.

```
root@s11-server1:~# init 6
```

Note: The reboot may take a few minutes to complete.

Log in and assume administrator privileges.

7. Log in to the `jmoose` account and issue the same `ps` command to access the processes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jmoose
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ ps -A -o user -o pid -o comm | more
    USER   PID  COMMAND
  jmoose  3691  ps
  jmoose  3687  -bash
jmoose@s11-server1:~$
```

Now you are able to display only your own processes. Would that be true for any user?
Yes.

8. Exit the `jmoose` account and then issue the `ps` command.

```
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ef | more
     UID   PID  PPID   C    STIME TTY         TIME CMD
    root     0     0   0 07:47:06 ?           0:01 sched
    root     5     0   0 07:47:03 ?           0:12 zpool-rpool
    root     1     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:00 /sbin/init
    root     2     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:00 pageout
    root     3     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:18 fsflush
    root     6     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:00 vmtasks
    root   135     1   0 07:47:48 ?           0:00
/usr/lib/pfexecd
    root     9     1   0 07:47:13 ?           0:18
/lib/svc/bin/svc.startd
    root    11     1   0 07:47:13 ?           0:58
/lib/svc/bin/svc.configd
    root   374   366   0 07:48:02 ?           0:00 hald-runner
  daemon    71     1   0 07:47:32 ?           0:00
/lib/crypto/kcfd
   dladm    43     1   0 07:47:23 ?           0:02 /sbin/dlmgmtd
    root   406     1   0 07:48:05 ?           0:00
/usr/sbin/cupsd -C /etc/cups/
cupsd.conf
…
…
…
```

The administrator account can still access all the processes.

9. Reset the process parameters in `/etc/security/policy.conf` to the original value. Display all the processes as Jerry Moose.

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi /etc/security/policy.conf
root@s11-server1:~# grep PRIV_DEFAULT /etc/security/policy.conf
# There are two different settings; PRIV_DEFAULT determines the
default
# Similarly, PRIV_DEFAULT=basic,!file_link_any takes away only
the
#PRIV_DEFAULT=basic
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Now reboot the system to have the policy take effect.

```
root@s11-server1:~# init 6
```

Note: The reboot may take a few minutes to complete.

Log in and assume administrator privileges. Then log in to the `jmoose` account.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jmoose
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ ps -ef | more
     UID   PID  PPID   C    STIME TTY         TIME CMD
    root     0     0   0 07:47:06 ?           0:01 sched
    root     5     0   0 07:47:03 ?           0:12 zpool-rpool
    root     1     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:00 /sbin/init
    root     2     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:00 pageout
    root     3     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:18 fsflush
    root     6     0   0 07:47:08 ?           0:00 vmtasks
…
…
…
```

Now Jerry Moose can display the processes for any user.
This completes the system-wide policy configuration for RBAC.

Exit the `jmoose` account.

```
jmoose@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
```

Now that you have completed this practice, turn off sharing.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs set sharenfs=off rpool/export/home/docs
root@s11-server1:~# exit
```

Practices for Lesson 9: Securing System Resources Using Solaris Auditing

Chapter 9

Practice Overview for Lesson 9

Practices Overview

In these practices, you will be presented with a plan for auditing various actions taken by users. When special privileges are used, Oracle Solaris auditing can create complete records that can be analyzed.

According to the predeployment test plan, you are asked to configure auditing for various situations. You configure auditing for preselected classes as well as a customized class. You modify the audit policy and configure the audit logs. The key areas explored in the practices are:

- Configuring the audit service
- Configuring audit logs
- Configuring the audit service per-zone
- Administering the audit service
- Managing audit records on local systems

Note: Your command output displays may be different than the displays in the practice. Some examples are storage data, process IDs, session and system-generated content.

Check your progress. You just completed the lesson on privileges and RBAC and now you are working with Oracle Solaris auditing.

√	**Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist**
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
√	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
√	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
√	Managing Services and Service Properties
√	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Practice 9-1: Configuring and Administering Oracle Solaris Auditing

Overview

As part of the predeployment testing plan, you are tasked with configuring and managing the audit service. In this practice, you will work with the following activities:

- Configuring the audit service
- Configuring audit logs
- Configuring the audit service in zones
  - Configure all zones identically for auditing.
- Administering the audit service
  - Enable/disable the audit service.
  - Refresh the audit service.

Note: In many cases, your displays will be different. The reason is that the content, such as dates, session number, and ZFS overhead, will make your displays unique to you.

Task 1: Configuring the Audit Service

This task covers the following activities:

- Determining audit service defaults
- Preselecting audit classes
- Determining a user's audit attributes
- Modifying a user's audit attributes
- Modifying the audit policy
- Specifying the audit warning destination email alias
- Adding an audit class
- Changing an audit event's class membership
- Using the newly configured class

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume primary administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Use the `auditconfig` command to view the attributable classes configured by default.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getflags
active user default audit flags = lo(0x1000,0x1000)
configured user default audit flags = lo(0x1000,0x1000)
```

At this time, the audit service is configured for successful and failed login/logout attempts. Where would you find the `lo` class? *In the `etc/security/audit_class` file*

5. Use the `auditconfig` command to view the non-attributable classes configured by default.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getnaflags
active non-attributable audit flags = lo(0x1000,0x1000)
configured non-attributable audit flags = lo(0x1000,0x1000)
```

How do you tell the system that you want to display non-attributable flags? *By using the command option `getnaflags`*

6. Use the `auditrecord` command to determine the type of records included under the `lo` class.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditrecord -c lo

Admin Server Authentication
  program     admin (various)        See SMC, WBEM, or AdminSuite
  event ID    6213                   AUE_admin_authenticate
  class       lo                     (0x0000000000001000)
      header
      subject
      [text]                         error message
      return

FTP server login
  program     proftpd                See in.ftpd(1M)
  event ID    6165                   AUE_ftpd
  class       lo                     (0x0000000000001000)
      header
      subject
      [text]                         error message
      return
…
…
…
```

If you look at the full output display, you will see all the authentication facilities by using the `lo` class.

In addition, you can see the record format that will be used to record the auditing events for respective authentication facilities.

7. Use the `auditconfig -getplugin` command to determine which plug-ins are active.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getplugin
Plugin: audit_binfile (active)
      Attributes: p_dir=/var/audit;p_fsize=0;p_minfree=1;

Plugin: audit_syslog (inactive)
      Attributes: p_flags=;

Plugin: audit_remote (inactive)
      Attributes: p_hosts=;p_retries=3;p_timeout=5;
```

Which plug-ins are active at this time? *Only the `audit_binfile` plug-in.*
Where would the auditing records be stored by default? *In the `/var/audit` directory*

8. Use the `userattr` command to determine the default `audit_flags` for the `oracle` user.

```
root@s11-server1:~# who -q
oracle
# users=1
```

Here, the `oracle` user is logged in at one place. It is the only user logged in at this time.
Your display may be different based on how many users or how many logins the `oracle` account has.

```
root@s11-server1:~# useradd audit_flags oracle
root@s11-server1:~#
```

At this time, by default, the `oracle` user has no specific `audit_flags` set. This doesn't account for systemwide `audit_flags`.

9. Using the `auditconfig` command, modify the systemwide attributable and non-attributable flags.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setnaflags lo,na
non-attributable audit flags = lo,na(0x1400,0x1400)
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setflags lo,ps,fw
user default audit flags = ps,lo,fw(0x101002,0x101002)
```

Where can you find more information about the `na`, `ps`, and `fw` flags? *In the `audit_class` file located in `/etc/security` directory (as demonstrated below)*

```
root@s11-server1:~# cd /etc/security
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# ls
audit_class    auth_attr.d    exec_attr     pam_policy    prof_attr.d
audit_event    crypt.conf     exec_attr.d   policy.conf   tcsd.conf
audit_warn     dev            extra_privs   priv_names
auth_attr      device_policy  kmfpolicy.xml prof_attr

root@s11-server1:/etc/security# grep na audit_class
# The "frcp" class is a reserved name.  It will force
preselection of
# It must not be renamed. However, the "frcp" value may be
changed in a
#     mask:class name:class description
# Length limits: class name up to 8, class description up to 72
and
0x0000000000000400:na:non-attributed

root@s11-server1:/etc/security# grep ps audit_class
0x0000000000100000:ps:process start/stop

root@s11-server1:/etc/security# grep fw audit_class
0x0000000000000002:fw:file write
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# cd
```

Now you have it. Try to display the definition of another flag.

10. Using the `usermod` command, set the `audit_flags` for the user accounts `jholt` and `sstudent`. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -K audit_flags=lo,fr:no jholt
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -K audit_flags=lo,fw:no sstudent
root@s11-server1:~# userattr audit_flags jholt
lo,fr:no
root@s11-server1:~# userattr audit_flags sstudent
lo,fw:no
```

You set the `audit_flags` for the users not logged in at this time. When they log in, the specified activities will be monitored and logged.

11. Use the `auditconfig -lspolicy` command to view the available policy options.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -lspolicy
policy string    description:
ahlt             halt machine if it can not record an async event
all              all policies
arge             include exec environment args in audit recs
argv             include exec command line args in audit recs
cnt              when no more space, drop recs and keep a cnt
group            include supplementary groups in audit recs
none             no policies
path             allow multiple paths per event
perzone          use a separate queue and auditd per zone
public           audit public files
seq              include a sequence number in audit recs
trail            include trailer token in audit recs
windata_down     include downgraded window information in audit recs
windata_up       include upgraded window information in audit recs
zonename         include zonename token in audit recs
```

If you would like to record auditing the zones separately, which policy would be suitable?
The `perzone` policy

12. Use the `auditconfig –setpolicy` command to modify the following policy options. Display the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setpolicy -cnt
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setpolicy +ahlt
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setpolicy +arge
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setpolicy +argv
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getpolicy
configured audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv
active audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv
```

Which policy options are being deleted? *The `cnt` policy*

Which policy options are being added? `ahlt`, `arge`, `argv`

13. Use the `vi` editor to add a line to the `aliases` file. Add the `oracle` and `root` users to the `audit_warn` mail alias at the end of the file. Use the `grep` command to confirm the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi /etc/mail/aliases
root@s11-server1:~# grep audit_warn /etc/mail/aliases
audit_warn:     oracle,root
```

14. Save a copy of the `audit_class` file. Use the `vi editor` to add the `pf` class to the `audit_class` file. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cd /etc/security
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# cp audit_class audit_class.orig
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# vi audit_class
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# tail audit_class
0x0000000000400000:xa:X - server access
0x0000000000800000:xp:X - privileged/administrative operations
0x0000000001000000:xc:X - object create/destroy
0x0000000002000000:xs:X - operations that always silently fail,
if bad
0x0000000003c00000:xx:X - all X events (meta-class)
0x0000000040000000:io:ioctl
0x0000000080000000:ex:exec
0x0000000100000000:ot:other
0x0010000000000000:pf:profiles command
0x0000000080475080:cusa:common user or role activity and sysadmin
actions (meta-class)
0xffffffffffffffff:all:all classes (meta-class)
```

What is the purpose of the `profiles` command? *To display assigned profiles. However, in this context, use `pfexec`.*

15. Save a copy of `audit_event` and edit the `audit_event` file as indicated.

```
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# cp audit_event audit_event.orig
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# vi audit_event
```

Add `pf` to the following event row:

```
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# grep pf audit_event
116:AUE_PFEXEC:execve(2) with pfexec enabled:ps,ex,ua,as,pf
```

What is the purpose of making this entry? *Now the `pf` class is linked to the `AUE_PFEXEC` event, which points to the `execve` system call. Every time this system call is made, it is recorded with the `pf` class usage.*

16. Now you can use the `pf` audit flag with the `auditconfig` command because the `pf` audit flag is fully configured.

```
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# auditconfig -setflags lo,pf
user default audit flags =
pf,lo(0x1000000001000,0x1000000001000)
root@s11-server1:/etc/security# cd
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Is it successfully configured? *Yes, it's confirmed by the message.*

Task 2: Configure Audit Logs

This task will cover the following activities:

- Create ZFS file systems for audit files.
- Allocate audit space for the audit trail.
- Configure system log as audit message destination.
- Configure all zones identically for auditing.

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.

3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Using the `df -h` command, determine which disks are mounted. This will help you discover the available disks for creating a ZFS pool.

```
root@s11-server1:~# df -h
Filesystem              Size   Used  Available Capacity  Mounted on
rpool/ROOT/solaris       31G   1.6G        20G     8%    /
/devices                  0K     0K         0K     0%    /devices
/dev                      0K     0K         0K     0%    /dev
ctfs                      0K     0K         0K     0%    /system/contract
proc                      0K     0K         0K     0%    /proc
mnttab                    0K     0K         0K     0%    /etc/mnttab
swap                    1.3G   1.7M       1.3G     1%    /system/volatile
objfs                     0K     0K         0K     0%    /system/object
sharefs                   0K     0K         0K     0%    /etc/dfs/sharetab
/usr/lib/libc/libc_hwcap1.so.1
                         22G   1.6G        20G     8%    /lib/libc.so.1
fd                        0K     0K         0K     0%    /dev/fd
rpool/ROOT/solaris/var   31G   639M        20G     3%    /var
swap                    1.3G    32K       1.3G     1%    /tmp
ora                     426G    35G       391G     9%    /opt/ora
rpool/export             31G    33K        20G     1%    /export
rpool/export/IPS         31G   5.7G        20G    23%    /export/IPS
rpool/export/home        31G    41K        20G     1%    /export/home
rpool/export/home/jholt  31G    35K        20G     1%    /export/home/jholt
rpool/export/home/jmoose
                         31G    36K        20G     1%    /export/home/jmoose
rpool/export/home/oracle
                         31G    34K        20G     1%    /export/home/oracle
Rpool/export/home/panna  31G    35K        20G     1%    /export/home/panna
rpool/export/home/sstudent
                         31G    35K        20G     1%    /export/home/sstudent
rpool                    31G    39K        20G     1%    /rpool
ora                     426G    35G       391G     9%    /mnt/sf_ora
…
…
…
```

You are looking for a disk address like `c7t2d0` in the first column. There should be no disks displayed.

Your display will be different based on what file systems are mounted at the time of display.

Note: If you see a disk on which the GuestAdditions package is mounted, ignore it.

5. Using the `format` command, determine the available disks. You will select disks `c7t8d0` and `c7t9d0`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# format
Searching for disks...done


AVAILABLE DISK SELECTIONS:
       0. c7t0d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 4174 alt 2 hd 255 sec 63>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@0,0
       1. c7t2d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@2,0
       2. c7t3d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@3,0
       3. c7t4d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@4,0
       4. c7t5d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@5,0
       5. c7t6d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       6. c7t7d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0
        7. c7t8d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       8. c7t9d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0
Specify disk (enter its number): 7
selecting c7t8d0
[disk formatted]
No Solaris fdisk partition found.

FORMAT MENU:
        disk       - select a disk
        type       - select (define) a disk type
        partition  - select (define) a partition table
        current    - describe the current disk
        format     - format and analyze the disk
        fdisk      - run the fdisk program
        repair     - repair a defective sector
        label      - write label to the disk
        analyze    - surface analysis
```

```
        defect     - defect list management
        backup     - search for backup labels
        verify     - read and display labels
        save       - save new disk/partition definitions
        inquiry    - show disk ID
        volname    - set 8-character volume name
        !<cmd>     - execute <cmd>, then return
        quit
format> p
WARNING - This disk may be in use by an application that has
       modified the fdisk table. Ensure that this disk is
       not currently in use before proceeding to use fdisk.
       Please answer with "y" or "n": y
format> fd
No fdisk table exists. The default partition for the disk is:

  a 100% "SOLARIS System" partition

Type "y" to accept the default partition, otherwise type "n" to
edit the partition table.
y
format> p

PARTITION MENU:
        0      - change `0' partition
        1      - change `1' partition
        2      - change `2' partition
        3      - change `3' partition
        4      - change `4' partition
        5      - change `5' partition
        6      - change `6' partition
        7      - change `7' partition
        select - select a predefined table
        modify - modify a predefined partition table
        name   - name the current table
        print  - display the current table
        label  - write partition map and label to the disk
        !<cmd> - execute <cmd>, then return
        quit
partition> p
Current partition table (default):
Total disk cylinders available: 528 + 2 (reserved cylinders)
```

```
Part      Tag    Flag     Cylinders        Size            Blocks
  0 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0
  1 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0
  2     backup    wu       0 - 1020     1021.00MB    (1021/0/0)2091008
  3 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0
  4 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0
  5 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0
  6 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0
  7 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0
  8       boot    wu       0 -    0        1.00MB    (1/0/0)        2048
  9 unassigned    wm       0               0         (0/0/0)           0

partition> q

FORMAT MENU:
        disk       - select a disk
        type       - select (define) a disk type
        partition  - select (define) a partition table
        current    - describe the current disk
        format     - format and analyze the disk
        fdisk      - run the fdisk program
        repair     - repair a defective sector
        label      - write label to the disk
        analyze    - surface analysis
        defect     - defect list management
        backup     - search for backup labels
        verify     - read and display labels
        save       - save new disk/partition definitions
        inquiry    - show disk ID
        volname    - set 8-character volume name
        !<cmd>     - execute <cmd>, then return
        quit
format> q

root@s11-server1:~#
```

Assumption: You are familiar with the `format` command and know how to partition the disk by using the `fdisk` option. If you are not familiar with this utility, the instructor will walk you through the steps.

Repeat this step for the `c7t9d0` disk.

The purpose of going into this utility is to select two empty disks. Make a note of these two disks: `c7t8d0` and `c7t9d0`.

6. Create a ZFS pool called `auditpool` and the file systems as indicated. Because you have created the ZFS pools and the file systems, you are taking quick steps to create the configuration for auditing.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool create auditpool c7t8d0 c7t9d0
'auditpool' successfully created, but with no redundancy; failure
of one device will cause loss of the pool
```

You created the `auditpool` with two available disks as you determined earlier. In case your business application auditing requires redundancy, you may want to create a mirror pool. Refer to Lesson 4 for details.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zpool status auditpool
  pool: auditpool
 state: ONLINE
  scan: none requested
config:

        NAME        STATE     READ WRITE CKSUM
        auditpool   ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t8d0    ONLINE       0     0     0
          c7t9d0    ONLINE       0     0     0

errors: No known data errors

root@s11-server1:~# zfs create -o mountpoint=/audit \
auditpool/auditdir
```

You created the file system with the `/audit` mount point so you can refer to the file system by using the mount point. This will save you time. Based on the volume of auditing records, you may consider storage saving and limiting actions, for example configuring compression and quotas.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs create -p \
auditpool/auditdir/s11-server1/files
```

Why do you create these file systems? *For storing auditing records for this host*

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list -r /auditpool
NAME                                  USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
auditpool                             218K  1.94G    32K  /auditpool
auditpool/auditdir                     31K  1.94G    31K  /audit
auditpool/auditdir/s11-server1         63K  1.94G    32K  /audit/s11-server1
auditpool/auditdir/s11-server1/files   31K  1.94G    31K  /audit/s11-
server1/files
```

Does the display confirm creation of the files? *Yes.*

7. Using the `auditconfig` command, set the `p_dir` parameter to the file systems.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setplugin audit_binfile active \
p_dir=/audit/s11-server1/files,/var/audit
```

You are activating auditing and setting the storage for auditing. What is the primary storage location? The ZFS file systems you just created.

What is the secondary storage location? */var/audit*

The secondary directory is also considered the “directory of last resort.” It means that you really want the system to write to the primary directory. However, if the system has to, it will use the secondary directory only when the primary directory is not available.

8. Using the command `auditconfig`, activate the `syslog` plug-in and indicate the audit flags.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setplugin audit_syslog active \
p_flags=-lo,-ss,+pf
```

Where can you find the details about these flags? *In the `audit_class` file*

What does the `pf` flag represent? *The `pf` class (`profiles` command)*

What is the significance of the minus and plus signs? *The minus sign represents the failed attempt and the plus sign represents successful attempt.*

9. Using the `vi` editor, make the following entry in the `/etc/syslog.conf` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi /etc/syslog.conf
root@s11-server1:~# grep audit.notice /etc/syslog.conf
audit.notice                          /var/log/auditlog
root@s11-server1:~# touch /var/log/auditlog
```

What is the purpose of defining this entry in `syslog`? *The file is defined so that the configured auditing records will be sent to the `/var/log/auditlog` directory.*

10. Refresh the `system-log` service and auditing for the new configuration to take effect.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm refresh system-log
```

11. Modify the audit policy to include zone auditing. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getpolicy
configured audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv
active audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv
```

At this time the zone auditing is not configured.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -setpolicy +zonename
```

By adding the `zonename` policy, the audit records will be tagged with the zone name.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getpolicy
configured audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv,zonename
active audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv,zonename
```

Has the `zonename` policy been added? *Yes.*

12. Copy the modified audit files from the global zone to the zone named `grandmazone`. Verify the results.

Determine the root directory for the zone `grandmazone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone info | more
zonename: grandmazone
zonepath: /zones/grandmazone
brand: solaris
autoboot: true
bootargs:
file-mac-profile:
pool:
limitpriv:
scheduling-class:
ip-type: exclusive
…
…
…
root@s11-server1:~# cp /etc/security/audit_class \
/zones/grandmazone/root/etc/security/audit_class
root@s11-server1:~# cp /etc/security/audit_event \
/zones/grandmazone/root/etc/security/audit_event
```

Because you are configuring the global and `grandmazone` identically, you also need the modified audit files in `grandmazone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls -l \
/zones/grandmazone/root/etc/security/audit_*
```

```
-rw-r--r--   1 root     sys         2437 Dec 16 07:59
/zones/grandmazone/root/etc/security/audit_class
-rw-r--r--   1 root     sys        30123 Dec 16 07:59
/zones/grandmazone/root/etc/security/audit_event
-rwxr--r--   1 root     sys        7024 Dec 14 07:59
/zones/grandmazone/root/etc/security/audit_warn
```

How can you tell that the copy action was successful? *By the timestamp on the files*

13. Use the `audit -s` command to start the audit service.

```
root@s11-server1:~# audit -s
```

Note: If you get an error `solaris audit invalid audit flag pf:Invalid argument`, terminate the audit service by using `audit -t` command and start the service by using `audit -s` command. To make sure you can gather records regarding the `pf` class, John Holt will be using the `pfexec` command. You will extract these records from the auditing log in the next practice.

14. As John Holt, try to access the `crontab` file of the superuser. Check John's profiles.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1     September 2012

jholt@s11-server1:~$ pfexec crontab -l root
crontab: you must be super-user to access another user's crontab
file
jholt@s11-server1:~$ profiles
      File System Management
      SMB Management
      VSCAN Management
      SMBFS Management
      Shadow Migration Monitor
      ZFS File System Management
      Basic Solaris User
      All
```

Because John does not have the `Cron Management` profile, he does not have the privilege to look at the superuser's `crontab` file.

15. As the superuser, assign the `Cron Management` profile to John Holt. Verify the result.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# usermod -P "Cron Management" jholt
root@s11-server1:~# profiles jholt
jholt:
          Cron Management
          Basic Solaris User
          All
```

Do you think John can display `root`'s `crontab` file now? *Yes.*

16. As John Holt, by using the `pfexec` command, attempt to display the contents of the superuser's `crontab` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$ pfexec crontab -l root
#ident  "%Z%%M% %I%     %E% SMI"
#
# Copyright 2007 Sun Microsystems, Inc.  All rights reserved.
# Use is subject to license terms.
#
#
# The root crontab should be used to perform accounting data
collection.
#
#
10 3 * * * /usr/sbin/logadm
15 3 * * 0 [ -x /usr/lib/fs/nfs/nfsfind ] &&
/usr/lib/fs/nfs/nfsfind
30 3 * * * [ -x /usr/lib/gss/gsscred_clean ] &&
/usr/lib/gss/gsscred_clean
jholt@s11-server1:~$ exit
```

Make a note of this command. You will be looking for `pfexec` command in the audit logs.

17. Using the `zoneadm` command, verify that the two zones are up and running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -civ
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   1 grandmazone      running    /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
   2 choczone         running    /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
```

Are the zones up? *Yes.*

18. Log in to both the zones to create some log in/out entries in the audit records.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone
[Connected to zone 'grandmazone' pts/1]
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@grandmazone:~# exit
logout
```

Repeat this step for the zone named `choczone`.

19. Check the current auditing configuration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getcond
audit condition = auditing

root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getpolicy
configured audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv,zonename
active audit policies = ahlt,arge,argv,zonename
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getflags
active user default audit flags =
pf,lo(0x1000000001000,0x1000000001000)
configured user default audit flags =
pf,lo(0x1000000001000,0x1000000001000)
root@s11-server1:~# auditconfig -getnaflags
active non-attributable audit flags = lo,na(0x1400,0x1400)
configured non-attributable audit flags = lo,na(0x1400,0x1400)
```

If your display does not match the current `audit_flag` values, modify them to match this display. Refer to the `auditconfig` command used earlier.

Practice 9-2: Managing Audit Records on Local Systems

Overview

Your predeployment test plan calls for managing the audit records and the audit trails. You need to analyze the audit records for multiple events configured by you. In addition, you need to terminate the audit file used currently.

The following areas will be addressed in this practice:

- Displaying audit record definitions
- Selecting audit events from the audit trail
- Viewing the contents of binary audit files
- Cleaning up an audit file currently in use (named `not_terminated`)

Task

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume primary administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password: oracle1
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Using the `auditrecord` command, create an HTML file containing the full set of all the record formats available for the audit events. Using the `more` command, display the contents of the file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditrecord -a -h > audit.recfmt.html
root@s11-server1:~# more audit.recfmt.html

<!doctype html PUBLIC "-//IETF//DTD HTML//EN">
<html>
<head>
  <title>Audit Record Formats</title>
  <META http-equiv="Content-Style-Type" content="text/css">
</head>

<body TEXT="#000000" BGCOLOR="#F0F0F0">

<table border=1>
  <tr bgcolor="#C0C0C0">
    <th>Event Name</th>
    <th>Event ID</th>
    <th>Event Class</th>
    <th>Mask</th>
  </tr>
```

```
…
…
…
```

5. Change the permissions on the `root` directory to `rwxr-xr-x` so it is accessible by anyone.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls -ld /root
drwx------ 3 root root 10 Dec 16 11:24 /root
root@s11-server1:~# chmod 755 /root
root@s11-server1:~# ls -ld /root
drwxr-xr-x 3 root root 10 Dec 16 11:24 /root
```

The current permissions allow only the `root` user access to the directory. Why do you have to change the permission to `x` (`execute`) for the browser? *You need this permission to `cd` into the directory.*

6. Using the `auditrecord` command to display all the login formats in use.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditrecord -p login | more

terminal login
  program     /usr/sbin/login      See login(1)
              /usr/dt/bin/dtlogin  See dtlogin
  event ID    6152                 AUE_login
  class       lo                   (0x0000000000001000)
      header
      subject
      [text]                       error message
      return

login: logout
  program     various              See login(1)
  event ID    6153                 AUE_logout
  class       lo                   (0x0000000000001000)
      header
      subject
      [text]                       "logout" username
      Return
…
…
…
```

How can you use these record formats? *Based on the class, you can use this information to expect the type of records included in the audit log.*

7. Using the `auditrecord` command, display the record format of the audit records in the `pf` class.

```
root@s11-server1:~# auditrecord -c pf


pfexec
  system call pfexec             See execve(2) with pfexec enabled
  event ID    116                AUE_PFEXEC
  class       ps,ex,ua,as,pf     (0x0100000080160000)
      header
      path                       pathname of the executable
      path                       pathname of working directory
      [privilege]                privileges if the limit or
inheritable set are changed
      [privilege]                privileges if the limit or
inheritable set are changed
      [process]                  process if ruid, euid, rgid or egid
is changed
      exec_arguments
      [exec_environment]         output if arge policy is set
      subject
      [use_of_privilege]
      return
```

Do you remember where you used the `AUE_PFEXEC` audit event? *In the `audit_event` file while configuring the `pf` class*

8. Use the `cd` command to go to `/audit/s11-server1/files`. Display the current audit file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cd /audit/s11-server1/files
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# ls
20111216140055.not_terminated.s11-server1
```

Why is this file labeled as `not_terminated`? *Because it is the currently active audit file*

Did you create this directory? *Yes, in the `auditpool`.*

9. Use the `audit -n` command to close out the current audit file. This will automatically start a new "`not_terminated`" file.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# audit -n
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# ls
20111216145549.20111216152447.s11-server1
20111216152447.not_terminated.s11-server1
```

You may get different output

10. Using the `auditreduce` command, filter the records for the `lo` class.

Caution: Use the audit file (with timestamp) from your display instead of the file in the following command.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# auditreduce -c lo \
/audit/s11-server1/files/20111216145549.20111216152447.s11-
server1 > lofile

root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# praudit lofile
file,2011-12-16 08:56:54.000 -06:00,
header,127,2,login - zlogin,,localhost,2011-12-16 08:56:54.832 -
06:00
subject,oracle,root,root,root,root,9186,3242122680,0 0 localhost
text,zone:global
return,success,0
zone,grandmazone
header,112,2,logout,,localhost,2011-12-16 08:56:56.942 -06:00
subject,oracle,root,root,root,root,9186,3242122680,0 0 localhost
return,success,0
zone,grandmazone
header,107,2,su,,localhost,2011-12-16 09:21:45.718 -06:00
subject,oracle,jholt,staff,jholt,staff,9233,3242122680,0 0
localhost
return,success,0
zone,global
header,107,2,su logout,,localhost,2011-12-16 09:22:01.284 -06:00
subject,oracle,jholt,staff,jholt,staff,9233,3242122680,0 0
localhost
return,success,0
zone,global
file,2011-12-16 09:22:01.000 -06:00,
```

The `lo` file displays the login/logout information as indicated in the audit flags.
You may get different output.

11. Using the `auditreduce` command, create a collection of `pf` class records. Use the `praudit` command to display.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# auditreduce -c pf \
/audit/s11-server1/files/20111216145549.20111216152447.s11-
server1 > pffile

root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# praudit pffile
file,2011-12-16 09:21:57.000 -06:00,
```

```
header,521,2,execve(2) with pfexec enabled,,localhost,2011-12-16
09:21:57.785 -06:00
path,/usr/bin/crontab
attribute,104555,root,bin,65538,59345,18446744073709551615
path,/home/jholt
process,oracle,jholt,staff,jholt,staff,9238,3242122680,0 0
localhost
exec_args,3,crontab,-l,root
exec_env,19,HZ=100,LC_MONETARY=C,SHELL=/bin/bash,TERM=sun-
color,LC_NUMERIC=C,LC_ALL=C,MAIL=/var/mail/jholt,PATH=/usr/bin:,L
C_MESSAGES=C,LC_COLLATE=C,PWD=/home/jholt,LANG=C,TZ=localtime,SHL
VL=1,HOME=/home/jholt,LOGNAME=jholt,LC_CTYPE=C,LC_TIME=C,_=/usr/b
in/pfexec
subject,oracle,root,staff,jholt,staff,9238,3242122680,0 0
localhost
return,success,0
zone,global
file,2011-12-16 09:21:57.000 -06:00,
```

Determine the fields of the header and the subject line by matching them up with the man pages in the next step.

Review the records and attempt to find the `crontab -l root` command issued by John Holt. Was it successful? *Yes.*

Why*? Because he used the* `pfexec` *command to use the* `Cron Management` *profile*

You may get different output

12. Use the `man` command to display the `audit.log` information. Use the `find` command to display the header format.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# man audit.log
…
…
…
/header
  The expanded header token consists of:

       token ID                1 byte
       record byte count       4 bytes
       version #               1 byte     [2]
       event type              2 bytes
       event modifier          2 bytes
       address type/length     4 bytes
       machine address         4 bytes/16 bytes (IPv4/IPv6
address)
```

```
        seconds of time          4 bytes/8 bytes   (32/64-bits)
        nanoseconds of time      4 bytes/8 bytes   (32/64-bits)
…
…
…
```

Match up the fields with the header line in the previous step. How long is the record? *480 bytes*

What is the event type? `execve(2)` *with* `pfexec` *enabled*

What is `execve`? *The system call to Solaris kernel*

Repeat this step for the subject format. Similarly you can find the format of other records such as the attribute record.

13. Use the `auditreduce` command to create a file for `grandmazone`. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# auditreduce -z \
grandmazone \
/audit/s11-server1/files/20111216145549.20111216152447.s11-
server1 > gmfile
```

14. Using the `praudit` command, browse the `gmfile` you just created.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# praudit gmfile
file,2011-12-16 08:56:54.000 -06:00,
header,127,2,login - zlogin,,s11-server1,2011-10-21 08:56:54.832
-06:00
subject,oracle,root,root,root,root,9186,3242122680,0 0 localhost
text,zone:global
return,success,0
zone,grandmazone
header,112,2,logout,,s11-server1,2011-12-16 08:56:56.942 -06:00
subject,oracle,root,root,root,root,9186,3242122680,0 0 s11-
server1
return,success,0
zone,grandmazone
file,2011-12-16 08:56:56.000 -06:00,
```

As a sample, go over the header for the `login - zlogin` class:

Refer to step 12 above or pull up the man pages for `audit.log` and do a find for header.

```
header,127,2,login - zlogin,,s11-server1,2011-12-16 08:56:54.832
-06:00
```

Now you can match up the fields in this raw format with the previous display or with the format below. You may get expect different output

An example of matching would be:

Token ID: header
Record byte count: 127
Version #: 2
Event type: login - zlogin
Event Modifier: - (nothing)
Address Type/Length: none specified
Machine address: s11-server1
Remaining fields: `2011-12-16 08:56:54.832 -06:00` – date/timestamp

The expanded **header** token consists of:

token ID	1 byte	
record byte count	4 bytes	
version #	1 byte	[2]
event type	2 bytes	
event modifier	2 bytes	
address type/length	4 bytes	
machine address	4 bytes/16 bytes (IPv4/IPv6 address)	
seconds of time	4 bytes/8 bytes (32/64-bits)	
nanoseconds of time	4 bytes/8 bytes (32/64-bits)	

You can display the audit records in three formats: text, raw, or XML format.

15. Use the `auditreduce` and `praudit -x` commands to display the output in XML format.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# praudit -x gmfile
<?xml version='1.0' encoding='UTF-8' ?>
<?xml-stylesheet type='text/xsl'
href='file:///usr/share/lib/xml/style/adt_record.xsl.1' ?>

<!DOCTYPE audit PUBLIC '-//Sun Microsystems, Inc.//DTD Audit
V1//EN' 'file:///usr/share/lib/xml/dtd/adt_record.dtd.1'>

<audit>
<file iso8601="2011-12-16 08:56:54.000 -06:00"></file>
<record version="2" event="login - zlogin" host="s11-server1"
iso8601="2011-12-16
08:56:54.832 -06:00">
<subject audit-uid="oracle" uid="root" gid="root" ruid="root"
rgid="root" pid="9186" sid="3242122680" tid="0 0 s11-server1"/>
<text>zone:global</text>
<return errval="success" retval="0"/>
<zone name="grandmazone"/>
</record>
```

```
<record version="2" event="logout" host="s11-server1"
iso8601="2011-12-16 08:56:56.942 -06:00">
…
…
```

Is there any benefit of using the XML format? *Yes, all the fields have the respective tags translated for me.*

16. Use the `ls` command to confirm the contents of the audit file storage directory.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# ls
20111216145549.20111216152447.s11-server1
20111216152447.not_terminated.s11-server1
gmfile
lofile
pffile
```

How can you tell that a new audit file has been started? *The file has `not_terminated` in the name. The previous file has the beginning and ending timestamp hence closed.* You may get expect different output

17. Use the command `audit -t` to terminate the audit service.

```
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# audit -t
root@s11-server1:/audit/s11-server1/files# auditconfig -getcond
audit condition = noaudit
```

How can you tell that the audit service is stopped? *Because in the output, it says `noaudit`*

18. Examine the `/var/log/auditlog` file for audit messages sent to `syslog`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# more /var/log/auditlog
…
…
…
Dec 16 09:44:05 s11-server1 audit: [ID 702911 audit.notice]
screenlock - unlock
failed session 810837356 by oracle as root:staff from s11-server1
Dec 16 10:41:21 s11-server1 audit: [ID 702911 audit.notice]
execve(2) with pfexec enabled ok session 3584330031 by oracle as
root:staff in global from s11-server1 proc_auid oracle proc_uid
jholt obj /home/jholt
Dec 16 10:58:52 s11-server1 last message repeated 1 time
…
…
…
```

Parts of this display, such as the session number, date, and time may be different for you.

You had configured the `syslog` for the `pf` class. Here is the message recorded in the `audit.log` file.

Practices for Lesson 10: Managing Processes and Priorities

Chapter 10

Practice Overview for Lesson 10

Practices Overview

In these practices, you are presented with a plan for managing the Oracle Solaris 11.1 processes, scheduling classes, and process priorities.

According to the predeployment test plan, you are going to evaluate various system processes. Assume you are supporting Oracle CRM and Financial applications. These applications will launch multiple processes and you will need to know which processes should run as high or low priority. Therefore, you are asked to assess the processes, their priorities, and scheduling classes. You are presented with various situations that will help you evaluate and configure the facilities. The key areas explored in the practices are:

- Modifying process scheduling priority
- Configuring the fair share scheduler (FSS) in an Oracle Solaris Zone

Note: Your display outputs will be different due to the type of tasks, processes, and users.

Check your progress. You just completed the Oracle Solaris auditing lesson and are now working with processes and priorities.

√	**Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist**
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
√	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
√	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
√	Managing Services and Service Properties
√	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
√	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Practice 10-1: Modifying Process Scheduling Priority

Overview

In this practice, you work with the processes in the following areas:

- Managing scheduling class and process priorities
- Configuring the fair share scheduler

Task 1: Manage Scheduling Class and Process Priorities

This task will cover the following activities:

- Listing the current processes
- Displaying process class information
- Determining the process global priority
- Designating a process priority
- Modifying process scheduling priority
- Changing the scheduling parameters of a timesharing process

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Make sure that all other virtual machines are shut down.
4. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation    SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

5. Use the `top` command to view the top 10 processes at a 10-second interval.

```
root@s11-server1:~# top 10 -s 10
last pid:  1121;  load avg:  0.20,  0.14,  0.12;  up 0+01:50:30
14:10:30
87 processes: 83 sleeping, 3 running, 1 on cpu
CPU states: 81.8% idle,  5.1% user, 13.1% kernel,  0.0% iowait,
0.0% swap
Kernel: 609 ctxsw, 9 trap, 327 intr, 1935 syscall, 4 flt
Memory: 1024M phys mem, 84M free mem, 977M total swap, 977M free
swap

   PID USERNAME NLWP PRI NICE  SIZE   RES STATE    TIME    CPU COMMAND
   991 oracle      2  59    0   87M   19M sleep    0:11  4.03% gnome-terminal
   733 oracle      3  59    0   65M   53M run      0:23  3.82% Xorg
   929 oracle     20  59    0  160M  140M run      2:01  1.75% java
   934 oracle      1  56    0   12M 5552K run      0:06  1.46% xscreensaver
  1120 root        1  59    0 4296K 2480K cpu      0:00  0.25% top
   917 oracle      1  49    0  107M   36M sleep    0:01  0.22% nautilus
   913 oracle      1  59    0   27M   15M sleep    0:01  0.08% metacity
   966 oracle      2  59    0   26M   12M sleep    0:06  0.07% nwam-manager
```

```
    11 root        18  59    0   12M   11M sleep    0:41  0.06% svc.configd
   536 root         7  59    0 9420K 1856K sleep    0:03  0.04% VBoxService
```

Enter ‘q’ to exit.

In what order is the CPU column sorted? *Descending, so that the processes using high CPU are displayed at the top*

Remember: Your display output will differ from the output presented here.

6. Use the `priocntl` command to view the configured classes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -l
CONFIGURED CLASSES
==================
SYS (System Class)

TS (Time Sharing)
     Configured TS User Priority Range: -60 through 60

SDC (System Duty-Cycle Class)

FX (Fixed priority)
     Configured FX User Priority Range: 0 through 60
```

These are all the classes currently being used at this time. For example, the Interactive class (IA) is not shown. The configured IA user priority range is -60 through 60.

7. Using the `ps` command, display the scheduling class and the priority of the processes currently running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecl | more
F S    UID   PID  PPID  CLS PRI     ADDR     SZ    WCHAN TTY   TIME CMD
1 T      0     0     0  SYS  96        ?      0          ?    0:01 sched
1 S      0     5     0  SDC  99        ?      0        ? ?    0:03 zpool -rp
0 S      0     1     0   TS  59        ?    688        ? ?    0:00 init
1 S      0     2     0  SYS  98        ?      0        ? ?    0:00 page out
1 S      0     3     0  SYS  60        ?      0        ? ?    0:05 fsflush
1 S      0     6     0  SDC  99        ?      0        ? ?    0:00 vmtasks
0 S     16    52     1   TS  59        ?    991        ? ?    0:00 ipmgmtd
…
…
…
0 S    101   934   848   IA  59        ?   3180        ? ?     0:08 xscreens
0 S    101   928     1   IA  59        ?   2793        ? ?    0:00 gvfsd-tr
0 R      0   997   994   IA  19        ?   2163         pts/1 0:00 bash
0 S    101   973     1   IA  59        ?   3199        ? ?    0:00 VBoxClie
0 S    101   972     1   IA  59        ?   3248        ? ?    0:00 VBoxClie
…
…
```

...

What is the highest priority in use? *It is 99 for the* `zpool` *process.*

What is the lowest priority in use? *It is 19 for the* `bash` *shell.*

Refer to the man pages for detailed explanation of the columns.

8. Use the `priocntl` command to generate a process in the TS scheduling class with a specified priority of 60 by using the `find` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -e -c TS -m 60 -p 60 find / -name
core -exec ls {} \; > /var/tmp/find 2<>/dev/null&
[1] 1348
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Here you execute the `find` command with the priority of 60. What is the highest priority a user can specify for a user-generated process? Refer to Step 6 to determine the highest priority, which is 60. Refer to man pages for the command options used here.

Use the `ps` command to inspect the priority of the `find` command. Repeat the command multiple times to check if the specified priority is being used at all times.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecl | grep find
 0 S      0  2959  2771   TS  60        ?   1865        ? pts/1
0:01 find
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecl | grep find
 0 S      0  2959  2771   TS  59        ?   1961        ? pts/1
0:01 find
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecl | grep find
 0 R      0  2959  2771   TS  60        ?   1985        ? pts/1
0:02 find
```

Is the designated priority 60 being used at all times? *No, but it is used most of the time. The kernel determines the priority based on what other jobs are running on the CPU; therefore, you might see a slight variance in the specified priority number.*

9. Create a small program to run for a longer duration, so that you can change its priority. Use the `priocntl` command to change the class and specify a time slice or the global priority of the program `modparm`.

Create a small script called `modparm`. Grant the owner the `execute` permission.

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi modparm
root@s11-server1:~# cat modparm
#!/bin/bash
find / -name jholt -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/jholt 2<>/dev/null
find / -name jmoose -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/jmoose 2<>/dev/null
find / -name panna -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/panna 2<>/dev/null
```

```
find / -name sstudent -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/sstudent
2<>/dev/null
find / -name oracle -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/oracle 2<>/dev/null
find / -name core -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/core 2<>/dev/null
root@s11-server1:~# ls -l modparm
-rw-r--r-- 1 root root 87 Dec 19 08:31 modparm
root@s11-server1:~# chmod 755 modparm
root@s11-server1:~# ls -l modparm
-rwxr-xr-x 1 root root 87 Dec 19 08:31 modparm

root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -e -c RT -t 500 -p 20 /root/modparm
&
[1] 5104
```

Here you execute your program in the RT class with a time slice of 500 milliseconds, a priority of 20 in the RT class, and a global priority of 120.

10. Verify the designated scheduling class and the priority.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep find
root 10270 10269   RT 120 02:08:08 pts/1      0:05 find / -name jholt -exec
ls{}
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep find
root 10270 10269  33 02:08:08 pts/1       0:25 find / -name jholt -exec ls{} ;
root 10281  1310   0 02:09:33 pts/1       0:00 grep find
```

Is your program running in the designated scheduling class? *Yes.*

Note: To see the continuation of the commands being run in the `modparm` script, continue to run `ps –ecf | grep find`.

11. Use the `priocntl` command to change the priority of the running program `modparm`. Verify the results.

Note: Make sure you use the process number that appears on your display. Your process number will be different than the process number (`5104`) presented in the example.

```
root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -s -p 30 5104
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep find
root 10293 10269  RT 120 02:11:43 pts/1 0:09 find / -name sstudent -exec ls{} ;
root 10299  1310  TS  29 02:12:04 pts/1 0:00 grep find
```

What are the new RT and the global priorities? *They are 30 and 130.*

Note that the system added 100 to 30 to come up with the global priority of 130.

Why would you need to change the priority? *Based on your business process priority, you needed to lower the priority of a long running transaction.*

12. Copy the `modparm` program to John Holt's home directory so that he can run the program under his privileges. As the administrator, you will change the program's scheduling class by using John's user ID.

As the administrator, execute the following command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cp modparm /export/home/jholt
```

As John Holt, execute the following commands.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation      SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ls modparm
modparm
jholt@s11-server1:~$ cp modparm holtparm
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ls -l holtparm
-rwxr-xr-x   1 jholt    staff        336 Dec 19 15:13 holtparm
```

Note that by copying, it changed the ownership.

Make sure that John has the `execute` permission on this program. If needed, use the `chmod` command as you did before.

Before you run the program as `jholt`, you need to edit the `/var/tmp` file part of the entry in the `holtparm` file for each user. The user `jholt` does not have the authorization to overwrite the original files but he does have the authorization to overwrite the files he himself has created.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ vi holtparm
jholt@s11-server1:~$ cat holtparm
#!/bin/bash
find / -name jholt -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/holt 2<>/dev/null
find / -name jmoose -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/moose 2<>/dev/null
find / -name panna -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/anna 2<>/dev/null
find / -name sstudent -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/student
2<>/dev/null
find / -name oracle -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/orcl 2<>/dev/null
find / -name core -exec ls{} \; > /var/tmp/cre 2<>/dev/null
```

As John Holt, run the program by using the following command:

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ./holtparm 2<>/dev/null&
[1] 5130
```

You will see some “permission denied” error messages, which you can ignore. The only purpose of the program is to continue running for a while.

13. Now, display the active program as the user John Holt. Next, change the program's scheduling class to `IA` and verify the results. Finally, use the `pkill -9` command to terminate the processes associated with the `find` command and `modparm` script. Verify that all the processes have been terminated.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ps -ef | grep holt
   jholt 10328 10315   0 02:17:40 pts/1       0:00 /bin/bash ./holtparm
   jholt 10329 10328  22 02:17:40 pts/1       0:10 find / -name jholt -
exec ls{} ;
   jholt 10335 10315   0 02:18:11 pts/1       0:00 -bash
   jholt 10315  1310   0 02:14:44 pts/1       0:00 -bash
   jholt 10334 10315   1 02:18:11 pts/1       0:00 ps -ef … …
…
…
```

When John submitted his job, it ended up in the TS class. Why? *The kernel made the call based on the nature of the program and overall workload*.

Determine John's `userid`.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ exit
logout
root@s11-server1:~# grep holt /etc/passwd
jholt:x:60005:10:john holt:/export/home/jholt:/bin/bash
```

As the administrator, set the scheduling class to IA for all the processes running under John's `userid` (`60005`).

```
root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -s -c IA -i uid 60005
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep holt
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep holt
  jholt  6244  6243   IA  50 22:13:06 pts/1       2:00 find / -name
jholt -exec ls{} ;
    root  6251  6106   TS  49 22:16:10 pts/1       0:00 grep holt
   jholt  6243     1   IA  59 22:13:06 pts/1       0:00 /bin/bash
./holtparm
```

Here you can see all the processes launched by John that are currently running in the IA class.

Why would you need to make changes like this? *You want to run the job interactively so that you can get results more quickly.*

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkill -9 find
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ef | grep find
    jholt  5143  5130   1 15:18:47 pts/1  0:10 find / -name jmoose -
exec ls{} ;
    jholt  5143  5130   1 15:18:47 pts/1  0:10 grep find
```

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkill -9 modparm
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ef | grep find
root@s11-server1:~#
```

14. Use the `ps` command to display all the processes running in the TS class.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ef -o class,zone,fname | grep TS | sort
-k2 | more
  TS   global asr-noti
  TS   global automoun
  TS   global automoun
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global cron
  TS   global cupsd
  TS   global dbus-dae
  TS   global devchass
  TS   global devfsadm
  TS   global dhcpagen
  TS   global dlmgmtd
  TS   global fmd
  TS   global hald
  TS   global hald-add
  TS   global hald-add
  TS   global hald-add
  TS   global hald-run
  TS   global htcachec
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global in.mpath
  TS   global in.ndpd
  TS   global in.route
  TS   global inetd
  TS   global init
  TS   global ipmgmtd
  TS   global iscsid
  TS   global kcfd
```

```
  TS   global login
  TS   global mountd
  TS   global named
  TS   global netcfgd
  TS   global nfsmapid
  TS   global nscd
  TS   global nwamd
  TS   global pfexecd
  TS   global picld
  TS   global pkg.depo
  TS   global ps
  TS   global rad
  TS   global reparsed
  TS   global rmvolmgr
  TS   global rpcbind
  TS   global sshd
  TS   global sshd
  TS   global sshd
  TS   global statd
  TS   global su
  TS   global su
  TS   global svc.conf
  TS   global svc.star
  TS   global sysevent
  TS   global syslogd
  TS   global ttymon
  TS   global ttymon
  TS   global ttymon
  TS   global ttymon
  TS   global ttymon
  TS   global utmpd
  TS   global vbiosd
  TS   global VBoxServ
  TS   global vtdaemon
  TS   global zoneadmd
  TS   global zoneadmd
  TS   global zoneprox
  TS choczone automoun
  TS choczone automoun
  TS choczone cron
  TS choczone dhcpagen
  TS choczone fmd
```

```
   TS choczone in.mpath
   TS choczone in.ndpd
   TS choczone in.route
   TS choczone inetd
   TS choczone init
   TS choczone ipmgmtd
   TS choczone kcfd
   TS choczone netcfgd
   TS choczone nscd
   TS choczone nwamd
   TS choczone pfexecd
   TS choczone rpcbind
   TS choczone sendmail
   TS choczone sendmail
   TS choczone smtp-not
   TS choczone sshd
   TS choczone svc.conf
   TS choczone svc.star
   TS choczone syslogd
   TS choczone ttymon
   TS choczone utmpd
   TS choczone zoneprox
   TS grandmazone automoun
   TS grandmazone automoun
   TS grandmazone cron
   TS grandmazone dhcpagen
   TS grandmazone fmd
   TS grandmazone in.mpath
   TS grandmazone in.ndpd
   TS grandmazone in.route
   TS grandmazone inetd
   TS grandmazone init
   TS grandmazone ipmgmtd
   TS grandmazone kcfd
   TS grandmazone netcfgd
   TS grandmazone nscd
   TS grandmazone nwamd
   TS grandmazone pfexecd
   TS grandmazone rpcbind
   TS grandmazone sendmail
   TS grandmazone sendmail
   TS grandmazone smtp-not
```

```
  TS grandmazone sshd
  TS grandmazone svc.conf
  TS grandmazone svc.star
  TS grandmazone syslogd
  TS grandmazone ttymon
  TS grandmazone utmpd
  TS grandmazone zoneprox
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Here you display all the processes running on your system that are in the TS class.

Task 2: Configure the Fair Share Scheduler

This task will cover the following activities:

- Making FSS the default scheduling class
- Moving processes into the FSS class
- Moving a project's processes into the FSS class
- Tuning scheduler parameters

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Make sure that all other virtual machines are shut down.
4. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

5. Use the `dispadmin` command to view and change the default scheduling class to FSS. Confirm the action.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -d
dispadmin: Default scheduling class is not set
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -d FSS
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -d
FSS     (Fair Share)
```

Is the default scheduling class changed for the global zone? *Yes.*

Does it mean that FSS has become the default scheduling class for all the processes running on the system? *Refer to the display in the next steps.*

6. Use the `dispadmin` command to view the current scheduling classes being used.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -l
CONFIGURED CLASSES
==================

SYS     (System Class)
TS      (Time Sharing)
SDC     (System Duty-Cycle Class)
FSS     (Fair Share)
FX      (Fixed Priority)
RT      (Real Time)
IA      (Interactive)
```

These are all the classes currently being used at this time.

7. Using the `ps` command, display the scheduling class of the currently running processes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ef -o class,zone,fname | grep -v CLS |
sort -k2 | more
  TS   global asr-noti
  TS   global automoun
  TS   global automoun
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global bash
  TS   global cron
  TS   global cupsd
  TS   global dbus-dae
  TS   global devchass
  TS   global devfsadm
  TS   global dhcpagen
  TS   global dlmgmtd
  IA   global find
  TS   global fmd
 SYS   global fsflush
  TS   global hald
  TS   global hald-add
  TS   global hald-add
  TS   global hald-add
  TS   global hald-run
  IA   global holtparm
  TS   global htcachec
```

```
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global httpd.wo
  TS   global in.mpath
  TS   global in.ndpd
  TS   global in.route
  TS   global inetd
  TS   global init
 SYS   global intrd
  TS   global ipmgmtd
  TS   global iscsid
  TS   global kcfd
 SDC   global kmem_tas
  FX   global lockd
 SYS   global lockd_kp
  TS   global login
  TS   global mountd
  TS   global named
  TS   global netcfgd
  FX   global nfsd
 SYS   global nfsd_kpr
  TS   global nfsmapid
  TS   global nscd
  TS   global nwamd
 SYS   global pageout
  TS   global pfexecd
  TS   global picld
  TS   global pkg.depo
  TS   global ps
  TS   global rad
  TS   global reparsed
  TS   global rmvolmgr
  TS   global rpcbind
 SYS   global sched
  TS   global sshd
  TS   global sshd
  TS   global sshd
  TS   global statd
  TS   global su
```

```
   TS   global su
   TS   global svc.conf
   TS   global svc.star
   TS   global sysevent
   TS   global syslogd
   TS   global ttymon
   TS   global ttymon
   TS   global ttymon
   TS   global ttymon
   TS   global ttymon
   TS   global utmpd
   TS   global vbiosd
   TS   global VBoxServ
  SYS   global vmtasks
   TS   global vtdaemon
   TS   global zoneadmd
   TS   global zoneadmd
   TS   global zoneprox
   FX   global zonestat
  SDC   global zpool-au
  SDC   global zpool-rp
   TS choczone automoun
   TS choczone automoun
   TS choczone cron
   TS choczone dhcpagen
   TS choczone fmd
   TS choczone in.mpath
   TS choczone in.ndpd
   TS choczone in.route
   TS choczone inetd
   TS choczone init
   TS choczone ipmgmtd
   TS choczone kcfd
   TS choczone netcfgd
   TS choczone nscd
   TS choczone nwamd
   TS choczone pfexecd
   TS choczone rpcbind
   TS choczone sendmail
   TS choczone sendmail
   TS choczone smtp-not
   TS choczone sshd
```

```
  TS choczone svc.conf
  TS choczone svc.star
  TS choczone syslogd
  TS choczone ttymon
  TS choczone utmpd
  TS choczone zoneprox
 SYS choczone zsched
  TS grandmazone automoun
  TS grandmazone automoun
  TS grandmazone cron
  TS grandmazone dhcpagen
  TS grandmazone fmd
  TS grandmazone in.mpath
  TS grandmazone in.ndpd
  TS grandmazone in.route
  TS grandmazone inetd
  TS grandmazone init
  TS grandmazone ipmgmtd
  TS grandmazone kcfd
  TS grandmazone netcfgd
  TS grandmazone nscd
  TS grandmazone nwamd
  TS grandmazone pfexecd
  TS grandmazone rpcbind
  TS grandmazone sendmail
  TS grandmazone sendmail
  TS grandmazone smtp-not
  TS grandmazone sshd
  TS grandmazone svc.conf
  TS grandmazone svc.star
  TS grandmazone syslogd
  TS grandmazone ttymon
  TS grandmazone utmpd
  TS grandmazone zoneprox
 SYS grandmazone zsched
…
…
```

What are some of the classes being used at this time? TS, IA, and SYS

8. Use the `priocntl` command to move all current processes into the FSS class.

```
root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -s -c FSS -i all
```

Why did you have to move all the current processes to the FSS class manually when you already set the default class to FSS? *Because the new default class is effective on next reboot. It does not affect the currently active processes.*

9. Using the `ps` command, display the modified scheduling class of the currently running processes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ef -o class,zone,fname | grep -v CLS |
sort -k2 | more
 FSS   global asr-noti
 FSS   global automoun
 FSS   global automoun
 FSS   global bash
 FSS   global bash
 FSS   global bash
 FSS   global bash
 FSS   global cron
 FSS   global cupsd
 FSS   global dbus-dae
 FSS   global devchass
 FSS   global devfsadm
 FSS   global dhcpagen
 FSS   global dlmgmtd
 FSS   global find
 FSS   global fmd
 SYS   global fsflush
 FSS   global grep
 FSS   global hald
 . . .
 FSS   global in.ndpd
 FSS   global in.route
 FSS   global inetd
  TS   global init
 SYS   global intrd
 FSS   global ipmgmtd
 FSS   global iscsid
 FSS   global kcfd
 SDC   global kmem_tas
 FSS   global lockd
 SYS   global lockd_kp
 FSS   global login
 FSS   global more
 FSS   global mountd
 FSS   global named
```

```
FSS   global netcfgd
FSS   global nfsd
SYS   global nfsd_kpr
FSS   global nfsmapid
FSS   global nscd.
FSS   global nwamd
SYS   global pageout
FSS   global pfexecd
FSS   global picld
FSS   global pkg.depo
FSS   global ps
FSS   global rad
FSS   global reparsed
FSS   global rmvolmgr
FSS   global rpcbind
SYS   global sched
FSS   global sort
FSS   global sshd
FSS   global sshd
FSS   global sshd
FSS   global statd
FSS   global su
FSS   global su
FSS   global svc.conf
FSS   global svc.star
FSS   global sysevent
FSS   global syslogd
FSS   global ttymon
FSS   global ttymon
FSS   global ttymon
FSS   global ttymon
FSS   global ttymon
FSS   global utmpd
FSS   global vbiosd
FSS   global VBoxServ
SYS   global vmtasks
FSS   global vtdaemon
FSS   global zoneadmd
FSS   global zoneadmd
FSS   global zoneprox
FSS   global zonestat
SDC   global zpool-au
SDC   global zpool-rp
FSS choczone automoun
FSS choczone automoun
```

```
FSS choczone cron
FSS choczone dhcpagen
FSS choczone fmd
FSS choczone in.mpath
FSS choczone in.ndpd
FSS choczone in.route
FSS choczone inetd
FSS choczone init
FSS choczone ipmgmtd
FSS choczone kcfd
FSS choczone netcfgd
FSS choczone nscd
FSS choczone nwamd
FSS choczone pfexecd
FSS choczone rpcbind
FSS choczone sendmail
FSS choczone sendmail
FSS choczone smtp-not
FSS choczone sshd
FSS choczone svc.conf
FSS choczone svc.star
FSS choczone syslogd
FSS choczone ttymon
FSS choczone utmpd
FSS choczone zoneprox
SYS choczone zsched
FSS grandmazone automoun
FSS grandmazone automoun
FSS grandmazone cron
FSS grandmazone dhcpagen
FSS grandmazone fmd
FSS grandmazone in.mpath
FSS grandmazone in.ndpd
FSS grandmazone in.route
FSS grandmazone inetd
FSS grandmazone init
FSS grandmazone ipmgmtd
FSS grandmazone kcfd
FSS grandmazone netcfgd
FSS grandmazone nscd
FSS grandmazone nwamd
FSS grandmazone pfexecd
FSS grandmazone rpcbind
FSS grandmazone sendmail
FSS grandmazone sendmail
```

```
 FSS grandmazone smtp-not
 FSS grandmazone sshd
 FSS grandmazone svc.conf
 FSS grandmazone svc.star
 FSS grandmazone syslogd
 FSS grandmazone ttymon
 FSS grandmazone utmpd
 FSS grandmazone zoneprox
 SYS grandmazone zsched
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Are all the processes using FSS? *No; however, most of the processes are using FSS.* Why are some of the processes in the TS,SDC and SYS classes? *The classes remain unchanged for these processes based on the nature of the processes. For example, the `zsched` daemon normally runs in the SYS class because of its scope.*

10. Using the `ps` command, display all the `init` processes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep init
    root     1     0   TS  59 10:54:11 ?          0:00 /usr/sbin/init
    root  2487  1562  FSS  59 11:00:37 ?          0:00 /usr/sbin/init
    root  2491  1406  FSS  59 11:00:37 ?          0:00 /usr/sbin/init
```

Why are there so many `init` processes? *One for each zone. Refer to the display in Step 9.*

11. Using the `priocntl` command, change the class of the `init` process to the FSS scheduling class. Display the classes of all the `init` processes to confirm the change.

```
root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -s -c FSS -i pid 1
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ef -o class,zone,fname | grep init
 FSS   global init
 FSS choczone init
 FSS grandmazone init
```

Did you change the classes for all the `init` processes*? No, only for the global zone because you specified the PID `1`.*

12. Now change a project's scheduling class. First, by using the `ps` command, find the current class for the current projects.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -o user,pid,uid,projid,project,class
    USER   PID PROJID  PROJECT  CLS
    root  1309      1 user.root   TS
    root  1310      1 user.root   TS
    root 10415      1 user.root   TS
```

Since you changed the scheduling class for all the processes, the `user.root` project and its processes are running in the FSS class. So, where can you find the definition of this project? *The definition can be found in the `/etc/project` file.*

Note: The project topic is covered here only in the context of a scheduling class. This topic will be covered in greater detail in Lesson 11: Evaluating System Resources.

```
root@s11-server1:~# grep user.root /etc/project
user.root:1::::

root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -s -c TS -i projid 1

root@s11-server1:~# ps -o user,pid,uid,projid,project,class
    USER   PID   UID PROJID  PROJECT  CLS
    root  5142     0      1 user.root   TS
    root  5189     0      1 user.root   TS
```

Did you change the scheduling class for all the processes? *No.*

How would you confirm that? *Refer to the commands in the previous steps.*

What would prompt this action of changing the project class? *You want to change the scheduling class based on the importance of a project.*

13. Using the `dispadmin` command, inspect the current scheduler parameter `quantum` value. Modify the value and verify the change.

Refer to Task1, Step 9 where you used `-t 500` to set a quantum value for the task. In the following steps, you change the time quantum unit to, for example, one-tenth and one-hundredth of a second.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -c FSS -g
#
# Fair Share Scheduler Configuration
#
RES=1000
#
# Time Quantum
#
QUANTUM=110
```

Currently, the quantum values are specified in 1/1000th of a second. You can change it to 1/100th of a second.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -c FSS -g -r 100
#
# Fair Share Scheduler Configuration
#
RES=100
#
# Time Quantum
```

```
#
QUANTUM=11
```

Why would you need to change these values? *When you want to work with smaller digits (specifying 10 is a lot easier than 100000 for quantum values*).

Now reboot `s11-server1` to make your changes effective.

```
root@s11-server1:~# init 6
```

Practice 10-2: Configuring the FSS in an Oracle Solaris Zone

Overview

Your predeployment test plan calls for configuring the CPU shares and the scheduling class FSS for the `grandmazone` and the `choczone` non-global zones. This practice will demonstrate the effect of using CPU shares in an attempt to constrain the resources.

The tasks are covered in this practice:

- Configuring CPU shares and the FSS
- Monitoring the FSS in two zones
- Removing the CPU shares configuration

Task 1: Configure the CPU Shares and the FSS

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1      September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Use the `zoneadm list` command to view the configured zones.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -civ
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   1 grandmazone      running    /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
   2 choczone         running    /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
```

If you recall, you had configured these zones earlier in the class.

5. Use the `zonecfg` command to add the CPU shares to `grandmazone`. Display the results to confirm the action.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone
zonecfg:grandmazone> set cpu-shares=80
zonecfg:grandmazone> exit
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone info | more
zonename: grandmazone
zonepath: /zones/grandmazone
brand: solaris
autoboot: true
bootargs:
file-mac-profile:
pool:
limitpriv:
scheduling-class:
```

```
ip-type: exclusive
hostid:
fs-allowed:
[cpu-shares: 80]
net:
        address not specified
        allowed-address not specified
        configure-allowed-address: true
        physical: vnic1
        defrouter not specified
anet:
        linkname: net0
        lower-link: auto
        allowed-address not specified
        configure-allowed-address: true
        defrouter not specified
        allowed-dhcp-cids not specified
        link-protection: mac-nospoof
        mac-address: random
        auto-mac-address: 2:8:20:7b:1a:a1
        mac-prefix not specified
        mac-slot not specified
        vlan-id not specified
        priority not specified
        rxrings not specified
        txrings not specified
        mtu not specified
        maxbw not specified
        rxfanout not specified
rctl:
        name: zone.cpu-shares
        value: (priv=privileged,limit=80,action=none)
```

Notice the CPU shares–related entries.

6. Repeat step 6 for the second zone, namely, `choczone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z choczone
zonecfg:choczone> set cpu-shares=10
zonecfg:choczone> exit
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z choczone info | more
zonename: choczone
zonepath: /zones/choczone
brand: solaris
```

```
autoboot: true
bootargs:
file-mac-profile:
pool:
limitpriv:
scheduling-class:
ip-type: exclusive
hostid:
fs-allowed:
[cpu-shares: 10]
net:
        address not specified
        allowed-address not specified
        configure-allowed-address: true
        physical: vnic2
        defrouter not specified
anet:
        linkname: net0
        lower-link: auto
        allowed-address not specified
        configure-allowed-address: true
        defrouter not specified
        allowed-dhcp-cids not specified
        link-protection: mac-nospoof
        mac-address: random
        auto-mac-address: 2:8:20:56:b5:ad
        mac-prefix not specified
        mac-slot not specified
        vlan-id not specified
        priority not specified
        rxrings not specified
        txrings not specified
        mtu not specified
        maxbw not specified
        rxfanout not specified
rctl:
        name: zone.cpu-shares
        value: (priv=privileged,limit=10,action=none)
```

Notice the number of CPU shares allocated to this zone.

7. Use the `zlogin` command to cleanly reboot both the zones. Verify that they are back up and running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone init 6
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin choczone init 6
root@s11-server1:~# zoneadm list -civ
  ID NAME             STATUS     PATH                           BRAND    IP
   0 global           running    /                              solaris  shared
   2 grandmazone      running    /zones/grandmazone             solaris  excl
   3 choczone         running    /zones/choczone                solaris  excl
```

How can you tell they have been rebooted? *The zone IDs are different.*

8. Now examine the effect of CPU share assignment. Log in to each zone and create the tasks as indicated.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin grandmazone
[Connected to zone 'grandmazone' pts/1]
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@grandmazone:~# newtask dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null &
[1] 7949
root@grandmazone:~# ps -ef | grep 7949
    root  7949  7945  34 03:12:42 pts/2       0:21 dd
if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
    root  7953  7945   0 03:13:55 pts/2       0:00 grep 7949
root@grandmazone:~# exit
logout

[Connection to zone 'grandmazone' pts/1 closed]
```

Start a similar task in `choczone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zlogin choczone
[Connected to zone 'choczone' pts/2]
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@choczone:~# newtask dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null &
[1] 7959
root@choczone:~# ps -ef | grep 7959
    root  7959  7955   8 03:15:12 pts/2       0:08 dd
if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
    root  7961  7955   0 03:15:14 pts/2       0:00 grep 7959
root@choczone:~# exit
logout

[Connection to zone 'choczone' pts/2 closed]
```

The `newtask` command starts a task that is an infinite loop. These tasks will be used to demonstrate the CPU resource utilization by the Oracle Solaris kernel.

9. Use the `ps` command from the global zone to verify that the task from `choczone` is running in the FSS class.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep 7949
    root  7967  3467  FSS  59 03:16:04 console     0:00 grep 7949
    root  7949     1  FSS   1 03:12:42 ?           2:31 dd
if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep 7959
    root  8430     1  FSS   1 03:15:01 ?           0:11 dd
if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep 7959
        root  8430     1  FSS   6 03:15:01 ?           0:13 dd
if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
root@s11-server1:~# ps -ecf | grep 7959
    root  8430     1  FSS   1 03:15:01 ?           0:16 dd
if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null
```

Is the task running in the FSS zone? *Yes.*

How and why? *Because earlier you set the default class to FSS for the whole system*

Check the scheduling class for the task running in `grandmazone`.

10. From the global zone, use the `prstat -Z` command to measure the CPU performance.

```
root@s11-server1:~# prstat -Z
   PID USERNAME  SIZE   RSS STATE  PRI NICE      TIME  CPU PROCESS/NLWP
  8183 root     1700K 1036K run     15    0   0:03:12  37% dd/1
  8430 root     1720K  836K run      1    0   0:00:14 4.1% dd/1
  8130 root       12M   11M run     58    0   0:00:08 0.9% svc.configd/21
     5 root        0K    0K sleep   99  -20   0:01:19 0.7% zpool-rpool/136
  7188 root       13M   12M sleep    1    0   0:00:16 0.6% svc.configd/22
  2384 pkg5srv  4496K 3200K sleep   60    0   0:00:10 0.4% htcacheclean/1
  1121 root       31M 9036K run     59    0   0:00:07 0.2% pkg.depotd/64
  8128 root       11M 8116K sleep   59    0   0:00:01 0.1% svc.startd/16
  8705 root     4500K 3232K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.1% inetd/6
  8780 root     2108K 1328K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.1% ttymon/1
   517 root       46M   16M sleep   59    0   0:00:02 0.1% poold/9
  8815 root     4224K 2380K sleep   60    0   0:00:00 0.0% configCCR.bin/1
  8811 root     5560K 2504K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% svc-ocm/1
  7186 root       11M 7884K sleep   59    0   0:00:01 0.0% svc.startd/14
  8817 root     4428K 3396K cpu1    59    0   0:00:00 0.0% prstat/1
  8505 root     5064K 3272K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% nscd/37
  8803 root     4356K 2212K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% net-iptun/1
  3466 root     1732K 1040K run     59    0   0:00:00 0.0% script/1
  8618 root       17M 8880K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% fmd/11
  8765 root     3948K 1788K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% syslogd/10
ZONEID    NPROC  SWAP   RSS MEMORY      TIME  CPU ZONE
```

```
     3       32  132M   76M   7.4%   0:03:29  38% grandmazone
     4       16   59M   37M   3.6%   0:00:23 5.2% choczone
     0       80  438M  236M    23%   0:02:01 1.4% global
…
…
<Press q to quit>
```

In order to get a true picture, you need to watch the dynamic display for a few minutes. You will see it getting close and closer to the ratio you specified. (Recall from the lecture the difference between the CPU shares and the CPU percentage.)

Convert the CPU shares to percentages and compare with the average CPU utilization here.

What column do we need to watch? *The `CPU` column*

Note that there's more CPU utilization by `grandmazone` as compared to `choczone`.

Why? *This is the effect of the CPU shares allocation.*

11. Use the `prctl` command to assign 40 CPU shares to the global zone.

```
root@s11-server1:~# prctl -n zone.cpu-shares -v 40 -r -i zone global
```

Note that you can modify the attributes of the global zone too.

12. Refer to step 9 and start a new task from the global zone.

```
root@s11-server1:~# newtask dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null&
[1] 10444
```

13. Observe the results running the `prstat` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# prstat -Z
   PID USERNAME  SIZE   RSS STATE  PRI NICE      TIME  CPU PROCESS/NLWP
  8183 root     1700K 1036K run      1    0   0:07:22  33% dd/1
 10444 root     1720K 1088K run     58    0   0:00:05 7.6% dd/1
  8430 root     1720K  836K run      1    0   0:00:53 5.3% dd/1
  2384 pkg5srv  4896K 3600K sleep   60    0   0:00:12 0.8% htcacheclean/1
     5 root        0K    0K sleep   99  -20   0:01:29 0.4% zpool-rpool/136
  1121 root       31M 9036K sleep   59    0   0:00:08 0.2% pkg.depotd/64
   517 root       46M   17M sleep   59    0   0:00:02 0.0% poold/9
 10445 root     4428K 3316K cpu1    59    0   0:00:00 0.0% prstat/1
  3466 root     1732K 1040K run     59    0   0:00:00 0.0% script/1
  8130 root       13M   12M sleep   59    0   0:00:11 0.0% svc.configd/21
  9377 root       17M 8856K sleep   54    0   0:00:00 0.0% fmd/12
  8418 daemon   7608K 4528K sleep   55    0   0:00:00 0.0% kcfd/3
  3467 root     3388K 2720K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% bash/1
  2399 root       11M 5920K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% httpd.worker/1
   349 root     4420K 1592K sleep   53    0   0:00:00 0.0% net-physical/1
   178 root        0K    0K sleep   99  -20   0:00:00 0.0% zpool-auditpool/136
   112 root     2848K 1052K sleep   59    0   0:00:00 0.0% in.mpathd/1
   159 root     7012K 3096K sleep   29    0   0:00:00 0.0% syseventd/18
    47 netcfg   3780K 2588K sleep   29    0   0:00:00 0.0% netcfgd/4
```

```
    82 daemon   8000K 5048K sleep   29    0   0:00:00 0.0% kcfd/4
ZONEID    NPROC  SWAP   RSS MEMORY      TIME  CPU ZONE
     3       30  128M   74M   7.3%   0:07:39  33% grandmazone
     0       81  440M  238M    23%   0:02:19 9.1% global
     4       29  125M   70M   6.8%   0:01:05 5.3% choczone
…
…
<Press q to quit>
```

Repeat the analysis you did in Step 10, but this time pay attention to the global zone CPU consumption. Remember to observe the changing CPU utilization for a few minutes to obtain an approximate average.

Compare the shares allocation and the percentages.

14. Abort all the infinite processes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkill -9 dd
root@s11-server1:~# pkill -9 find
```

Task 2: Remove the CPU shares configuration

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use the password `oracle1`.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Use the `zonecfg` command to view the current CPU shares configuration of the zone named `grandmazone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone info
zonename: grandmazone
zonepath: /zones/grandmazone
brand: solaris
autoboot: true
bootargs:
file-mac-profile:
pool:
limitpriv:
scheduling-class:
ip-type: exclusive
hostid:
fs-allowed:
[cpu-shares: 80]
```

```
net:
        address not specified
        allowed-address not specified
        configure-allowed-address: true
        physical: vnic1
        defrouter not specified
anet:
        linkname: net0
        lower-link: auto
        allowed-address not specified
        configure-allowed-address: true
        defrouter not specified
        allowed-dhcp-cids not specified
        link-protection: mac-nospoof
        mac-address: random
        auto-mac-address: 2:8:20:7b:1a:a1
        mac-prefix not specified
        mac-slot not specified
        vlan-id not specified
        priority not specified
        rxrings not specified
        txrings not specified
        mtu not specified
        maxbw not specified
        rxfanout not specified
rctl:
        name: zone.cpu-shares
        value: (priv=privileged,limit=80,action=none)
```

Notice the CPU configuration.

5. Use the `zonecfg` command to delete the CPU configuration. Verify the action.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone clear cpu-shares
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z grandmazone info
zonename: grandmazone
zonepath: /zones/grandmazone
brand: solaris
autoboot: true
bootargs:
file-mac-profile:
pool:
limitpriv:
scheduling-class:
```

```
ip-type: exclusive
hostid:
fs-allowed:
net:
        address not specified
        allowed-address not specified
        configure-allowed-address: true
        physical: vnic1
        defrouter not specified
anet:
      linkname: net0
      lower-link: auto
      allowed-address not specified
      configure-allowed-address: true
      defrouter not specified
      allowed-dhcp-cids not specified
      link-protection: mac-nospoof
      mac-address: random
      auto-mac-address: 2:8:20:34:6e:84
      mac-prefix not specified
      mac-slot not specified
      vlan-id not specified
      priority not specified
      rxrings not specified
      txrings not specified
      mtu not specified
      maxbw not specified
      rxfanout not specified
      vsi-typeid not specified
      vsi-vers not specified
      vsi-mgrid not specified
      etsbw-lcl not specified
      cos not specified
      pkey not specified
      linkmode not specified
```

Notice that the `cpu-shares` entry is deleted.

6. Repeat Step 5 for the second zone, namely, `choczone`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z choczone clear cpu-shares
root@s11-server1:~# zonecfg -z choczone info | grep cpu-shares
```

To make the configuration effective, do you need to reboot the zones? *Yes.*
The zones will be rebooted as part of step 8.

7. Reset the system default scheduling class by using the `dispadmin` command. Verify the change.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -d
FSS   (Fair Share)
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -d TS
root@s11-server1:~# dispadmin -d
TS    (Time Sharing)
root@s11-server1:~# priocntl -s -c TS -i all
```

Have you verified that all system processes have been moved to the TS class? *Yes.*

8. Reboot the system by using the `init 6` command. By rebooting the entire system, the global CPU share property is cleared. In addition, the global zone has the new default scheduling class (TS). As part of the reboot, the zones are rebooted automatically so their CPU share properties are also cleared. After the reboot is completed, the new configuration will be in place.

Practices for Lesson 11: Evaluating System Resources

Chapter 11

Practice Overview for Lesson 11

Practices Overview

In these practices, you are presented with a plan for configuring resource controls and assessing system performance.

According to the predeployment test plan, you need to evaluate various system resource controls. As a standard practice, you will be required to conserve resources, such as system memory, CPU time, and data storage. You are asked to control the CPU resource for your CRM project with the objective that other projects should also be able to share the CPU resources. Then you evaluate the memory, CPU, and disk usage by using many system utilities. Based on your evaluation of the resources, you will be able to allocate appropriate resources to various projects. The key areas explored in the practices are:

- Managing resource controls in global and non-global zones
- Evaluating system performance levels

Check your progress. You just completed Lesson 10: Managing Processes and Priorities and are now working with system resource evaluation.

√	Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
√	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
√	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
√	Managing Services and Service Properties
√	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
√	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
√	Managing Processes and Priorities
	Monitoring the System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Practice 11-1: Managing Resource Controls in Global and Non-Global Zones

Overview

In this practice, you will work with the resource controls in the following areas:

- Administering projects and tasks
- Configuring resource controls and attributes

Note: Your displays will be different from those presented in this guide due to the dynamic nature of the contents displayed.

Task

This task will cover the following activities:

- Creating a resource pool
- Defining a project
- Obtaining project membership information
- Editing and validating project attributes
- Binding the resource pool to a project
- Creating a new task
- Moving a running process into a new task
- Monitoring resource control events globally
- Displaying information about a given resource control
- Setting resource controls
- Deleting a project

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password.
3. Run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

4. Use the `projects` command to view the default projects in the system.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l
system
      projid : 0
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
```

```
user.root
        projid : 1
        comment: ""
        users  : (none)
        groups : (none)
        attribs:
noproject
        projid : 2
        comment: ""
        users  : (none)
        groups : (none)
        attribs:
default
        projid : 3
        comment: ""
        users  : (none)
        groups : (none)
        attribs:
group.staff
        projid : 10
        comment: ""
        users  : (none)
        groups : (none)
        attribs:
root@s11-server1:~# cat /etc/project
system:0::::
user.root:1::::
noproject:2::::
default:3::::
group.staff:10::::
```

You are viewing this default project information so that you are aware of the default entries in the project file. In addition, when you make changes in the following steps, you will be able to recognize the changes.

In this display (project context), what is 10 in the `group.staff` project? *Project ID*

Check in the `/etc/group` file if the `staff` group is defined. What is its numeric ID? *It is* *`10`.*

5. Use the `projadd` command to create a project and assign it to John Holt. Verify that an entry has been made in `/etc/project` file by using the `projects –l` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projadd -U jholt -p 4000 s11deploy
root@s11-server1:~# /usr/bin/id -ap jholt
uid=60005(jholt) gid=10(staff) groups=10(staff)
projid=10(group.staff)
```

Verify John Holt's group membership.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l
system
      projid : 0
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
user.root
      projid : 1
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
noproject
      projid : 2
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
default
      projid : 3
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
group.staff
      projid : 10
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
s11deploy
      projid : 4000
      comment: ""
      users  : jholt
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
```

Has the project been added? *Yes*

6. Use the `projmod` command to add the staff group to the project membership.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projmod -G staff -c 'Oracle Solaris 11.1
deployment' s11deploy
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l | tail
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
s11deploy
      projid : 4000
      comment: "Oracle Solaris 11.1 deployment"
      users  : jholt
      groups : staff
      attribs:
```

What is the significance of group membership in the project? The `staff` group has an entry in the project file for accounting purposes.

Note: You are going to bind the `s11deploy` project to the resource pool `pool_gmzone` that you created in Practice 6: Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network.

7. Enable the `pools` service and create the `default` pool configuration file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm enable system/pools:default
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -c discover
```

8. Verify the pool and pset configuration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# poolcfg -c info | more

system default
      string     system.comment
      int        system.version 1
      boolean    system.bind-default true
      string     system.poold.objectives wt-load


…
…
…
      pool pool_gmzone
            int        pool.sy_id1
            boolean    pool.active true
            boolean    pool.default false
            string     pool.scheduler FSS
            int        pool.importance 1
            string     pool.comment
```

```
            pset       pset_1to2
…
…
…

      pset pset_1to2
            int        pset.sys_id 1
            boolean    pset.default false
            uint       pset.min 1
            uint       pset.max 2
            string     pset.units population
            uint       pset.load 0
            uint       pset.size 0
            string     pset.comment
```

You have a pool with 1–2 CPUs.
Your output may differ.

9. Use the `projmod` command to assign the pool to the `s11deploy` project.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projmod -s -K project.pool=pool_gmzone \
s11deploy
```

Here you bind `pool_gmzone` to the `s11deploy` project.
What is the main purpose of this binding? *So that you can allocate one to two CPUs to the `s11deploy` project. An assumption was made that this project can possibly consume up to two CPUs at times.*

10. Verify the pool binding to your project.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l | tail
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
s11deploy
      projid : 4000
      comment: "Oracle Solaris 11.1 deployment"
      users  : jholt
      groups : staff
      attribs: project.pool=pool_gmzone
```

As you can see, an attribute called `project.pool` has been added and it is pointing to `pool_gmzone`.

11. By using the `newtask` command, create a task under the `s11deploy` project.

```
root@s11-server1:~# newtask -p s11deploy dd if=/dev/zero \
of=/dev/null&
[1] 2954

root@s11-server1:~# newtask -p s11deploy dd if=/dev/zero
of=/dev/null&
[1] 2955
```

For training purposes, you are creating two infinite tasks. Note down the task numbers displayed; you will need them subsequently. On your job, you may be running a different program, such as a program to create reports.

12. Use the `prstat` command to display all currently running processes and projects. Let this command run to view the dynamically changing CPU usage.

```
root@s11-server1:~# prstat -JR
…
…
…
PROJID    NPROC  SWAP   RSS MEMORY      TIME  CPU PROJECT
  4000        2  312K 7328K   0.7%   2:35:44  50% s11deploy
     1        3 2912K   17M   1.6%   0:00:00 0.3% user.root
     0       99  142M  170M    17%   0:00:47 0.0% system
     10       1   10M    0K    0.0%  0:00:00 0.0% group.staff
     3        2   10M 1164K    0.0%  0:00:14 0.0% default
```

Notice the value for your `s11deploy` project in the `NPROC` column. What is the project ID displayed? *It is 4000.*

Is this ID the same as that defined in the `/etc/project` file? *Yes*

13. Create a new task and associate it with your project.

```
root@s11-server1:~# newtask dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null&
[1] 2980
```

For training purposes, you are creating an infinitely running job. On your job, it may be related to the supported business application.

```
root@s11-server1:~# newtask -v -p s11deploy -c 2980
250
```

Here you associate the process ID `2980` with your `s11deploy` project. Did it create a new task? *Yes,* `250`

How many other processes are associated with process ID `250`? *Two processes*

What are their process IDs? *They are* `2954` *and* `2955`.

Your output may differ.

Example:

```
root@s11-server1:~# prstat -JR | grep dd
PID USERNAME  SIZE   RSS STATE  PRI NICE      TIME  CPU PROCESS/NLWP
  2980 root      7156K 1316K cpu0    59    0   1:36:13  25% dd/1
  2954 root      7156K 1316K cpu1    59    0   1:55:55  25% dd/1
```

Here you can associate the PIDs `2980` and `2954` with the `dd` programs that are running.

14. Associate another attribute with your project. Verify the result.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projmod -a -K "task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)"
s11deploy
```

For training purposes, you are configuring a ceiling for the maximum number of lightweight processes (LWPs) to be 100. The assumption is that you determined that your project can consume significant resources sometimes and you want to limit the LWPs.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l | tail
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
s11deploy
      projid : 4000
      comment: "Oracle Solaris 11.1 deployment"
      users  : jholt
      groups : staff
      attribs: project.pool=pool_gmzone
               task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)
```

What will happen if the number of processes exceeds 100? *The Oracle Solaris kernel will not start the 101st task because the ceiling is defined as 100.*

15. Use the `projmod` command to remove the pool configuration from your project. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projmod -r -K project.pool s11deploy
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l | tail
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
s11deploy
      projid : 4000
      comment: "Oracle Solaris 11 deployment"
      users  : jholt
      groups : staff
      attribs: task.max-lwps=(priv,100,deny)
```

Because you configured a limit of 100 for LWPs, it does not make sense to use one to two CPUs. So assume that you determined that the CPU pool is not needed any more. Is the pool showing up in the project file? *No*

Note: Test the LWPs limit in the next few steps.

16. Use the `projmod` command to modify the maximum LWPs to a more manageable three. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projmod -K 'task.max-lwps=(priv,3,deny)' \
s11deploy
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l | tail
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
s11deploy
      projid : 4000
      comment: "Oracle Solaris 11.1 deployment"
      users  : jholt
      groups : staff
      attribs: task.max-lwps=(priv,3,deny)
```

What will happen if an attempt is made to start the fourth process? *The Oracle Solaris kernel will not start it.*

How can you tell? *The deny directive in the command*

17. Use the `newtask` command to create a task called `bash` for the project `s11deploy`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# newtask -p s11deploy bash
```

Because your default shell for launching processes is `bash`, you create a new task for your `s11deploy` project.

```
root@s11-server1:~# prctl -n task.max-lwps $$
process: 3220: bash
NAME    PRIVILEGE       VALUE    FLAG   ACTION                       RECIPIENT
task.max-lwps
        usage               3
        privileged          3       -   deny                                 -
        system          2.15G     max   deny                                 -
```

This verifies the LWPs setting for your default shell.

```
root@s11-server1:~# id -p
uid=0(root) gid=0(root) projid=4000(s11deploy)
```

18. Using the `rctladm` command, enable global monitoring on the lightweight processes. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# rctladm -e syslog task.max-lwps
root@s11-server1:~# rctladm | grep max-lwps
task.max-lwps              syslog=notice  [ count ]
project.max-lwps           syslog=off     [ no-basic count ]
zone.max-lwps              syslog=off     [ no-basic count ]
```

Using this utility, you can globally monitor as well as log the tasks that cross the threshold. In this case, you set the `syslog` priority level to `notice` so that a log entry can be generated in the `/var/adm/messages` file. You will learn more about `syslog` in Lesson 12: Monitoring and Troubleshooting Software Failures.

19. Create multiple `bash` processes and test the limit.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps -o project,taskid -p $$
 PROJECT TASKID
s11deploy   256
```

The current task ID of the `bash` process is `256`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# bash
root@s11-server1:~# bash
root@s11-server1:~# bash
bash: fork: retry: Resource temporarily unavailable
…
…
…
```

You may see this message being displayed repetitively. Use Ctrl + C to stop the display.

Press Enter and then exit from one of the bash processes in order to receive the command prompt. Verify by using the `ps` command that you now have only three bash processes running.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ps
  PID TTY         TIME CMD
 3352 console     0:00 ps
 2923 console     0:00 bash
 2962 console     0:00 bash
 2962 console     0:00 bash
```

How many `bash` processes are running currently? *Three*

Now exit two bash process.

```
root@s11-server1:~# exit
root@s11-server1:~# exit
```

20. Use the `prctl` command to display the current resource controls.

```
root@s11-server1:~# prctl $$
process: 2974: bash
NAME    PRIVILEGE       VALUE    FLAG   ACTION                       RECIPIENT
process.max-port-events
        privileged      65.5K       -   deny                                 -
        system          2.15G     max   deny                                 -
process.max-msg-messages
        privileged      8.19K       -   deny                                 -
        system          4.29G     max   deny                                 -
…
…
…
task.max-lwps
        usage               3
        system          2.15G     max   deny
…
…
…
project.max-tasks
        usage               6
        system          2.15G     max   deny                                 -
project.max-processes
        usage              39
        system          2.15G     max   deny                                 -
…
…
…
```

```
zone.cpu-shares
        usage              1
        privileged         1       -    none                              -
        system          65.5K     max   none                              -
```

Notice the first column for various types of global resource controls. Some levels to note are project, task, process, and zone.

21. Using the `tail` command, view the error messages in the `/var/adm/messages` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tail /var/adm/messages
Dec 19 13:39:17 s11-serv1 genunix: [ID 748619 kern.notice]
privileged rctl task.max-lwps (value 3) exceeded by process 3492
in task 256.
Dec 19 13:39:18 s11-serv1 genunix: [ID 748619 kern.notice]
privileged rctl task.max-lwps (value 3) exceeded by process 3494
in task 256.
Dec 19 13:39:18 s11-serv1 genunix: [ID 748619 kern.notice]
privileged rctl task.max-lwps (value 3) exceeded by process 3495
in task 256.ps

…
…
…
```

Can you match the task ID 256 that is reported here with the task ID in step 21? *Yes*
Note that the threshold of three and other related information are also listed.
Each time an attempt is made to cross the threshold, an entry is made in this log.

Kill the infinitely running processes.

```
root@s11-server1:~# pkill -9 dd
root@s11-server1:~#
```

22. Using the `projdel` command, delete the `s11deploy` project. Confirm the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# projdel s11deploy
root@s11-server1:~# projects -l
system
      projid : 0
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
user.root
      projid : 1
      comment: ""
```

```
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
noproject
      projid : 2
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
default
      projid : 3
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
group.staff
      projid : 10
      comment: ""
      users  : (none)
      groups : (none)
      attribs:
```

You are deleting the project only for demonstration purposes. On the job, you will, of course, delete a project only when the project is not needed anymore.

If this project is needed in subsequent practices, you will create it.

Practice 11-2: Evaluating System Performance Levels

Overview

Your predeployment test plan calls for evaluating system performance. This practice will cover monitoring the memory, CPU, and disk usage. Multiple system utilities will be used to assess system performance. The following topics will be addressed in this practice:

- Displaying virtual memory statistics (`vmstat`)
- Displaying disk usage information
- Monitoring system activities
- Collecting system activity data automatically (`sar`)
- Setting up automatic data collection (`sar`)

Task 1: Displaying Virtual Memory Statistics

- Virtual memory statistics (`vmstat`)
- System event information (`vmstat -s`)
- Swapping statistics (`vmstat -S`)

1. Verify that the Sol11_Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Use the `newtask` command to create an infinitely running task.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# newtask dd if=/dev/zero of=/dev/null&
[1] 3462
```

This task is created to generate some workload for training purposes. On the job, you will have your application and system processes. While these tasks are running, as a system administrator, you would like to monitor their impact on system resources, especially the memory and CPU.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# vmstat 5
 kthr      memory            page            disk          faults      cpu
 r b w   swap  free  re  mf pi po fr de sr s0 s1 s2 s3   in   sy   cs us sy id
 0 0 0 948016 53556   4  32  0  0  0  0 21  1  3 -1 -1  794 733327 451 5 15 80
 0 0 0 930388 33940   3  12  0  0  0  0  0  9  0  0  0  683 87963 555  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930284 33844   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  637 88670 461  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930284 33856   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  663 89500 465  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930284 33856   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  649 88298 466  8 18 74
```

```
 0 0 0 930284 33856   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  642 87486 465  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930276 33844   0   1  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  638 87308 457  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930276 33844   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  8  0  0  0  657 88708 500  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930276 33844   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  635 88078 459  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930276 33844   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  794 87826 461  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930276 33844   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  646 87986 462  8 18 74
 0 0 0 930276 33844   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  643 86883 463  8 19 73
11 0 0 932936 36496   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0 2771 83461 450  8 20 72
 0 0 0 961508 65076   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  3  0  0  0  656 88659 532  8 18 74
 0 0 0 961508 65076   0   0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  0  967 87164 503  8 18 74
```

Some points to note are:

a. For example, take the last two lines. When the system is consuming less CPU (`sy` under the `CPU` column), more memory is available. In addition, the last column (`id` under the `CPU` column) shows more idle time.

b. As another example, take the third line from the bottom. Currently, the system is not using the CPU for a longer time (`sy` under the `CPU` column), so there is more CPU idle time (`id` under the `CPU` column) and less memory available.

6. Use the `vmstat -s` command to display the system events since the last reboot.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# vmstat -s | more
        0 swap ins
        0 swap outs
        0 pages swapped in
        0 pages swapped out
   875033 total address trans. faults taken
        6 page ins
       69 page outs
       32 pages paged in
      948 pages paged out
   110830 total reclaims
   110830 reclaims from free list
        0 micro (hat) faults
   875033 minor (as) faults
        5 major faults
   207486 copy-on-write faults
   217129 zero fill page faults
   464034 pages examined by the clock daemon
        2 revolutions of the clock hand
     3777 pages freed by the clock daemon
     2356 forks
…
…
…
```

So, what can you take away from here? Although some of the display items are common with the previous display (pages swapped in and swapped out), consider the highlighted items:

a. `110830 reclaims from free list`: Displays how many free pages of memory were reclaimed, which indicates how quickly the system was running out of memory. Because the memory is used for programs, it explains the load on the system memory.

b. `2356 forks`: Tells you how many processes are launching subprocesses. These processes create the workload that requires memory and CPU resources.

7. Use the `vmstat -S` command to display system memory pages swapping in and swapping out.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# vmstat -S
kthr      memory            page            disk          faults      cpu
 r b w   swap  free  si   so pi po fr de sr s0 s1 s2 s3   in   sy   cs us sy id
 0 0 0 1024800 150444 0    0  0  1  6  0 298 8  0 -2 -2  719 7142 1157  1  2 97
```

Here you can check the swapping activity, for example, memory pages swapped in (`pi`) and pages swapped out (`po`). This demonstrates the workload created by one job running in the background.

Task 2: Displaying Disk Usage Information

This task covers the following activities:

- Displaying general disk usage data
- Extending disk statistics (`iostat -xtc`)
- Displaying disk space information (`df -h`)

1. Verify that the Sol11-Serve1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su -` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. Use the `iostat` command to check the input/output activity on your disks and CPU.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# iostat 5
   tty        sd0           sd1           sd2           sd3            cpu
 tin tout kps tps serv  kps tps serv  kps tps serv  kps tps serv   us sy wt id
   0    3 138   4   51    1   0    7    0   0    0    0   0    0    4 10  0 86
   0   47   0   0    0    0   0    0    0   0    0    0   0    0    8 18  0 74
   0   16  50  18    3    0   0    0    0   0    0    0   0    0    8 18  0 74
   0   16   0   0    0    0   0    0    0   0    0    0   0    0    8 18  0 74
```

Here you can inspect the service time for transactions by using the `sd1` disk, which is 7 milliseconds. Compare that to the 51 milliseconds service time for transactions on the `sd0` disk. Generally speaking, it shows you which disk is taking more time in servicing your transaction. However, you need to keep in mind the nature of the transactions too.

6. Use the `iostat –xtc` command to obtain extended input/output statistics for the disks.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# iostat -xtc
                    extended device statistics
tty         cpu
device     r/s    w/s   kr/s   kw/s wait actv  svc_t  %w  %b  tin tout  us sy wt
id
sd0        2.4    1.4   92.9   21.9  0.1  0.0   48.6   3   4    0    9   5 11  0
84
sd1        0.1    0.0    0.4    0.0  0.0  0.0    6.9   0   0
sd2        0.0    0.0    0.0    0.0  0.0  0.0    0.0   0   0
sd3        0.0    0.0    0.0    0.0  0.0  0.0    0.0   0   0
sd4        0.0    0.0    0.0    0.0  0.0  0.0    0.0   0   0
sd5        0.0    0.0    0.0    0.0  0.0  0.0    0.0   0   0
```

This display can help you to understand I/O activity. For example, consider the reads and writes of the `sd0` disk: 92.9 kilobytes worth of data read per second; 21.9 kilobytes worth of data written per second. The `svc_t` column shows the service time in milliseconds. Look at 48.6 milliseconds of average service time for the `sd0` disk. Compare this disk to the other disks.

Why is its service time so high? *The answer is because, in the current environment, you have the default ZFS file system on this disk.*

7. Use the `df` command to display system memory pages swapping in and swapping out.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# df -h | more
Filesystem             Size  Used Avail Use% Mounted on
rpool/ROOT/solaris      13G  4.5G  8.5G  35% /
swap                   907M  460K  906M   1% /system/volatile
/usr/lib/libc/libc_hwcap1.so.1
                        13G  4.5G  8.5G  35% /lib/libc.so.1
swap                   907M   56K  906M   1% /tmp
ora                    209G  118G   92G  57% /opt/ora
rpool/export           8.5G   32K  8.5G   1% /export
rpool/export/home      8.5G   37K  8.5G   1% /export/home
rpool/export/home/jholt
                       8.5G   40K  8.5G   1% /export/home/jholt
rpool/export/home/oracle
                       8.5G  807K  8.5G   1% /export/home/oracle
…
…
```

This command is very useful because it presents the used and available storage information for all mounted file systems. For example, here you can see that the ZFS root file system has used up 4.5G out of 13G.

Task 3: Monitoring System Activities

The following activities are covered in this task:

- Checking file access (`sar –a`)
- Checking buffer activity (`sar –b`)
- Checking system call statistics (`sar –c`)
- Checking disk activity (`sar –d`)
- Checking unused memory (`sar –r`)
- Setting up automatic data collection

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If it is not running, start it now. Double-click the Sol11-Desktop icon to launch the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password.
3. Right-click the desktop background and open a terminal window.
4. In the terminal window, run the `su –` command to assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1     September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

5. In the terminal window, use the `sar –a` command to check on file access.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# sar -a 5 2

SunOS s11-desktop 5.11 11.1 i86pc    12/16/2012

16:07:28  iget/s namei/s dirbk/s
16:07:33       0       2       0
16:07:38       0       6       0

Average        0       4       0
```

You ran the command for two displays every 5 seconds. On an average, the system could not find one file (under column `namei/s`). At the system level, if this number is high, you need to be concerned.

6. Use the `sar –b` command to check on buffer activity.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# sar -b 2 2

SunOS s11-desktop 5.11 11.1 i86pc    12/16/2012

16:42:45 bread/s lread/s %rcache bwrit/s lwrit/s %wcache pread/s pwrit/s
16:42:47       0       0     100       0       0     100       0       0
16:42:49       0       0     100       0       0     100       0       0
```

```
Average         0        0      100        0        0      100        0        0
```

This command displays the reads from the buffer and writes to the buffer. At a glance, you can see 100% reads from the buffer and 100% writes to the buffer. You are looking for any anomalies. Here things are running smoothly as far as buffer activity is concerned.

7. Use the `sar -c` command to check on system call activity.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# sar -c 2 2

SunOS s11-desktop 5.11 11.1  i86pc    12/16/2012
16:50:29 scall/s sread/s swrit/s  fork/s  exec/s rchar/s wchar/s
16:50:31 1473382  736337  736318    0.00    0.00 376991964 376989750
16:50:33 1360794  680028  680012    0.00    0.00 348160177 348160229

Average  1417088  708182  708165    0.00    0.00 362576070 362574990
```

This command displays system calls for reads, writes, forks, and other system call information. This information is useful when you are developing metrics or want to use `dtrace` to track down a very high number of system calls.

8. Use the `sar -d` command to check on disk activity.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# sar -d 2 2

SunOS s11-desktop 5.11 11.1  i86pc    12/16/2012

16:56:15   device        %busy   avque   r+w/s  blks/s  avwait  avserv

16:56:17   sd0               0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
           sd0,a             0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
           sd0,c             0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
           sd0,i             0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
           sd0,q             0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
…
…
…
Average    sd0               2     0.0      19      79     0.0     1.3
           sd0,a             2     0.0      19      79     0.0     1.3
           sd0,c             0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
           sd0,i             0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
           sd0,q             0     0.0       0       0     0.0     0.0
…
…
…
```

This command displays disk-related activity, for example, reads and writes as shown in the `r+w/s` column, average wait time, and average service time in milliseconds. How can you use this information? *If any of these numbers are too high for your application, there may be a disk issue.*

9. Use the command `sar -r` to check on available physical and swap memory.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# sar -r 2 2

SunOS s11-desktop 5.11 11.1  i86pc    12/16/2012
17:07:08 freemem freeswap
17:07:10    8215  1853912
17:07:12    8222  1853912

Average     8218  1853912
```

This command displays the physical and swap memory available. The benefit of tracking these numbers is that you will be able to take corrective action if you are running out of memory. For example, if very little swap memory is left, you can increase the swap memory allocation.

10. Use the `crontab` command to edit the system `cron` file. Uncomment the last entry to run the system script `sa2`. Exit edit mode.

```
root@s11-desktop:/etc/cron.d# crontab -l sys
…
…
…
#0 * * * 0-6 /usr/lib/sa/sa1
#20,40 8-17 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa1
#5 18 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa2 -s 8:00 -e 18:01 -i 1200 -A

root@s11-desktop:/etc/cron.d# crontab -e sys
…
…
…
#0 * * * 0-6 /usr/lib/sa/sa1
#20,40 8-17 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa1
5 18 * * 1-5 /usr/lib/sa/sa2 -s 8:00 -e 18:01 -i 1200 -A
```

This entry will run the `sa2` script every day Monday through Friday at 6:05 PM. The monitoring start time is at 8 AM and it ends at 6:01 PM. The performance data interval is every 1200 seconds (every 20 minutes) and you are collecting all statistics, for example, memory, CPU, and disk usage.

11. Shut down the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.

Practices for Lesson 12: Monitoring and Troubleshooting Software Failures

Chapter 12

Practice Overview for Lesson 12

Practices Overview

In these practices, you will be presented with a plan for viewing and exploring various configurations of system messaging. In addition, you will inspect the current system and application dump facilities, which are beneficial when debugging system or application problems. The following activities are covered:

- Setting up system messaging
- Configuring system and application crash facilities

Scenario

Your company would like to evaluate the system messaging and debugging facilities. Because your company also plans to utilize ZFS, you are asked to create disk and data failures and correct the problems.

Check your progress. You have completed evaluating system resources.

√	**Oracle Solaris 11.1 Predeployment Checklist**
√	Managing the Image Packaging System (IPS) and Packages
√	Installing Oracle Solaris 11.1 on Multiple Hosts
√	Managing the Business Application Data
√	Configuring Network and Traffic Failover
√	Configuring Zones and the Virtual Network
√	Managing Services and Service Properties
√	Configuring Privileges and Role-Based Access Control
√	Securing System Resources by Using Oracle Solaris Auditing
√	Managing Processes and Priorities
√	Evaluating System Resources
	Monitoring and Troubleshooting System Failures

Practice 12-1: Setting Up System Messaging

Overview

In this practice, you work with system messaging facilities. You configure message routing on Sol11-Desktop as well as on the message destination host Sol11-Server1. This practice will include the following activities:

- Setting up message routing
- Using TCP trace to log a message

Note: The contents of your display may be different from the displays in this practice.

Task 1: Setting up message routing

The following activities are covered in this task:

- Determining the type and destination of messages
- Setting up message routing
- Restarting the message logging daemon (`syslogd`)
- Adding one-line entries to a system log file
- Monitoring the message logging in real time

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 and Sol11-Desktop virtual machines are running. If the virtual machines are not running, start them now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Right-click on the desktop and open a terminal window. Assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

3. Copy the `/etc/syslog.conf` file and then use the `more` command to display the contents of the file.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# cp /etc/syslog.conf /etc/syslog.conf.orig

root@s11-desktop:~# more /etc/syslog.conf
#
# syslog configuration file.
#
# This file is processed by m4 so be careful to quote (`') names
# that match m4 reserved words.  Also, within ifdef's, arguments
# containing commas must be quoted.
#
*.err;kern.notice;auth.notice                /dev/sysmsg
*.err;kern.debug;daemon.notice;mail.crit    /var/adm/messages
```

```
*.alert;kern.err;daemon.err           operator
*.alert                               root
```

What does the configuration `kern.debug` mean? *It means that the message source facility is defined as kernel and the severity as debug. Debug means that messages of any severity should be recorded in the* `/var/adm/messages` *file.*

Can you break down the configuration set `daemon.err`? *Yes.*

4. Using the `vi` editor, modify `/etc/syslog.conf` to add the `local0.notice` entry as indicated.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# vi /etc/syslog.conf
```

Add the following entry at the end of the file.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# grep local0.notice /etc/syslog.conf
local0.notice                         @s11-server1
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

Caution: After `local0.notice`, you need to use (one or more) tabs. These are not spaces.

What is the `local0` facility? *It is reserved for users to record messages.*

5. Use the `svcadm` command to restart the `syslogd` daemon so that the new configuration is activated.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# svcadm refresh system/system-log
```

Now your `syslog` configuration is in effect.

6. Display detailed information about the telnet service package, install the package, and then verify that the telnet service is online.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# pkg info -r *telnet* | more
          Name: network/telnet
       Summary: Telnet client command
   Description: The telnet(1) utility communicates with another
host using the
                legacy Telnet protocol (RFCs 727, 854, 1073,
1096, 1408, 1510,
                1571, 1572, 2941, 2942, 2946, and 2952).
      Category: Applications/System Utilities
         State: Installed
     Publisher: solaris
       Version: 0.5.11
 Build Release: 5.11
        Branch: 0.175.1.0.0.24.2
Packaging Date: September 19, 2012 06:44:32 PM
          Size: 237.29 kB
          FMRI: pkg://solaris/network/telnet@0.5.11,5.11-
0.175.1.0.0.24.2:20120
919T184432Z
          Name: service/network/telnet
       Summary: Telnet service
   Description: Provides server support for the legacy Telnet
protocol (RFCs
                727, 854, 1073, 1096, 1408, 1510, 1571, 1572,
2941, 2942, 2946,
                and 2952).
      Category: System/Services
         State: Not installed
     Publisher: solaris
       Version: 0.5.11
 Build Release: 5.11
        Branch: 0.175.1.0.0.24.2
Packaging Date: September 19, 2012 06:45:51 PM
          Size: 80.77 kB
          FMRI:
pkg://solaris/service/network/telnet@0.5.11,5.11-0.175.1.0.0.24
.2:20120919T184551Z
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

Install the telnet package if, it’s not installed.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# pkg install service/network/telnet
```

```
           Packages to install:  1
       Create boot environment: No
Create backup boot environment: No
            Services to change:  1

DOWNLOAD                                PKGS         FILES
XFER (MB)   SPEED
Completed                                1/1         10/10
0.0/0.0 69.4k/s

PHASE                                          ITEMS
Installing new actions                         32/32
Updating package state database                 Done
Updating image state                            Done
Creating fast lookup database                   Done
root@s11-desktop:~#
root@s11-desktop:~# svcs -a | grep telnet
online         8:14:18 svc:/network/telnet:default
```

In case the telnet service is installed as disabled, use the command "`svcadm enable network/telnet`" to bring it online.

7. Switch to the `s11-server1`. Use the `netservices open` command to ensure that all services are open and the message can be received from `s11-desktop`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# netservices open
```

Ignore any error messages.

8. On `s11-server1`, by using the `touch` command, create the `/var/log/local0.log` file.

```
root@s11-server1:~# touch /var/log/local0.log
```

9. On `s11-server1`, by using the `vi` editor, modify the `/etc/syslog.conf` file by adding the entry as indicated.

```
root@s11-server1:~# vi /etc/syslog.conf
root@s11-server1:~# grep local0 /etc/syslog.conf
local0.notice                              /var/log/local0.log
```

On `s11-server1`, what is the destination file of the message? *The `/var/log/local0.log` file.*

10. On the `s11-server1` host, by using the `svcadm` command, restart the `system-log` service. Use the `tail` command to monitor the messages being written to the log.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm refresh system-log
root@s11-server1:~# tail -f /var/log/local0.log
```

Now if any message is written to this log, it will be displayed under the above command.

11. Switch to the `s11-desktop` host and by using the `logger` command, record a message to the log.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# logger -p local0.notice hello from s11-
desktop
```

Where would this message be displayed? *On the `s11-server1` host.*

Why? *Because you configured the destination of `local0.notice` to `s11-server1`.*

12. Switch to the `s11-server1` host and view the message.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tail -f /var/log/local0.log
Dec 20 08:07:58 s11-desktop oracle: [ID 702911 local0.notice]
hello from s11-desktop
```

Use `CTRL + C` key to exit.

So here it is. Where did this message come from? *From `s11-desktop`.*

Task 2: Using TCP Trace to Log a Message

This task covers the following activity:

- Using TCP trace to log a message
- Verifying the message in the log

Note: In this task, you will be working with both the hosts: Sol11-Desktop and Sol11-Server1. You can determine the host by the command prompt in the displays.

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 and Sol11-Desktop virtual machines are running. If the virtual machines are not running, start them now.
2. Log in to both virtual machines as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

3. Use the `man` command to find the facility and the message severity level used by the `inetd` daemon.

After the man pages are displayed, do a find on `tcp_trace`, which will take you to the desired information directly.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# man inetd
…
…
…
/tcp_trace
…
…
…
tcp_trace

         If true, and this is a nowait-type service, inetd  logs
         the  client's IP address and TCP port number, along with
         the name of the service, for each  incoming  connection,
         using  the  syslog(3C)  facility.  inetd uses the syslog
         facility code daemon  and  notice  priority  level.  See
         syslog.conf(4)  for  a  description  of syslog codes and
         severity levels. This logging is separate from the log-
         ging done by the TCP wrappers facility.
```

What facility code and severity level does `inetd` use? *`daemon.notice`*

4. Using the `grep` command, display the `daemon.notice` entry in `syslog`.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# grep daemon.notice /etc/syslog.conf
*.err;kern.debug;daemon.notice;mail.crit    /var/adm/messages
```

When a daemon needs to send a notice, where would it send it? To the `/var/adm/messages` file

5. Open another terminal window on S11-Desktop. In the new window, use the `tail –f` command to monitor the messages file.

```
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
root@s11-desktop:~# tail –f /var/adm/messages
…
…
…
```

```
Dec 20 02:48:40 s11-desktop gnome-session[2745]: [ID 702911
daemon.warning] WARNING: IceListenForConnections returned 2 non-
local listeners: inet/s11-desktop:47263,inet6/s11-desktop:33256
Dec 20 02:48:44 s11-desktop genunix: [ID 127566 kern.info] device
pciclass,030000@2(display#0) keeps up device
scsiclass,05@1,0(cdrom#1), but the former is not power managed
```

You will need to monitor this log for any new messages being written when you use the `telnet` command.

Your output may differ.

6. Switch to the `s11-server1` host and use the `telnet` command to connect to the `s11-desktop` host.

Check to see if the `telnet` service is enabled. If it is not, enable it.

```
root@s11-server1:~# svcs telnet
STATE          STIME    FMRI
disabled       10:12:24 svc:/network/telnet:default
root@s11-server1:~# svcadm enable telnet
root@s11-server1:~# svcs telnet
STATE          STIME    FMRI
online         11:03:04 svc:/network/telnet:default

root@s11-server1:~# telnet s11-desktop
Trying 192.168.0.111...
Connected to s11-desktop.
Escape character is '^]'.
login: oracle
Password: oracle1
Last login: Sat Oct 22 10:48:48 on rad/0
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1       September 2012
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ ls
Desktop    Documents  Downloads  Public
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ pwd
/home/oracle
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ exit
logout
Connection to s11-desktop closed by foreign host.
root@s11-server1:~#
```

What is the purpose of this `telnet` connection to the desktop? *To verify that the system writes the connection information in the log*

7. Switch to the `s11-desktop` host and go to the window that is running the `tail` command.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# tail -f /var/adm/messages
…
…
…
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1695]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] module.c: Failed to load module "module-oss"
(argument: "device="/dev/dsp" sink_name=output
source_name=input"): initialization failed.
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1695]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] main.c: Module load failed.
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1695]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] main.c: Failed to initialize daemon.
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1693]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] main.c: Daemon startup failed.
…
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

Do you see any new entry being written for the `telnet` command? *No.*

8. On the `s11-desktop` host, in the other window, use the `inetadm` command to check whether tracing is enabled.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# inetadm -l telnet
SCOPE      NAME=VALUE
           name=”telnet”
           endpoint_type=”stream”
…
…
…
default    bind_addr=""
default    bind_fail_max=-1
default    bind_fail_interval=-1
default    max_con_rate=-1
default    max_copies=-1
default    con_rate_offline=-1
default    failrate_cnt=40
default    failrate_interval=60
default    inherit_env=TRUE
default    tcp_trace=FALSE
default    tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default    connection_backlog=10
default    tcp_keepalive=FALSE
```

Is `tcp_trace` enabled? *No*

How can you tell? *The `tcp_trace` is set to `FALSE` in the display.*

9. On the `s11-desktop` host, use the `inetadm` command to enable `tcp_trace`.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# inetadm –m telnet tcp_trace=true
root@s11-desktop:~# inetadm –l telnet
SCOPE      NAME=VALUE
           name=”telnet”
           endpoint_type=”stream”
…
…
…
default    bind_addr=""
default    bind_fail_max=-1
default    bind_fail_interval=-1
default    max_con_rate=-1
default    max_copies=-1
default    con_rate_offline=-1
default    failrate_cnt=40
default    failrate_interval=60
default    inherit_env=TRUE
           tcp_trace=TRUE
default    tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default    connection_backlog=10
default    tcp_keepalive=FALSE
```

Is `tcp_trace` enabled now? *Yes.*

10. Switch to s11-server1 and telnet to `s11-desktop`. Then return to `s11-desktop`, in the monitoring window, look for any new message written to the log.

```
root@s11-server1:~# telnet s11-desktop
Trying 192.168.0.111...
Connected to s11-desktop.
Escape character is '^]'.
login: oracle
Password: oracle1
Last login: Sat Oct 22 10:48:48 on s11-server1.myd
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ ls
Desktop    Documents  Downloads  Public
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ pwd
/home/oracle
oracle@s11-desktop:~$ exit
logout
Connection to s11-desktop closed by foreign host. root@s11-
server1:~#
```

Now switch to `s11-desktop` and look for any new messages regarding telnet.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# tail -f /var/adm/messages
…
…
…
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1695]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] module.c: Failed to load module "module-oss"
(argument: "device="/dev/dsp" sink_name=output
source_name=input"): initialization failed.
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1695]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] main.c: Module load failed.
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1695]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] main.c: Failed to initialize daemon.
Dec 13 22:14:32 s11-desktop pulseaudio[1693]: [ID 295310
user.error] [(null)] main.c: Daemon startup failed.
Dec 16 09:44:39 s11-desktop inetd[1018]: [ID 317013
daemon.notice] telnet[2726] from 192.168.0.100 54587
. . .
root@s11-desktop:~#
```

Do you see a new log entry? *Yes.*

Can you identify the fields in this message?

Date/time stamp, local host name, process name (PID), Message ID, `facility.level`*, incoming request, PPID, IP address of the source host, and port number.*

11. Return to the other `s11-desktop` terminal window and by using the `inetadm` command, disable `tcp_trace`.

```
root@s11-desktop:~# inetadm -m telnet tcp_trace=FALSE
root@s11-desktop:~# inetadm –l telnet
SCOPE      NAME=VALUE
           name="telnet"
           endpoint_type="stream"
…
…
…
default    bind_addr=""
default    bind_fail_max=-1
default    bind_fail_interval=-1
default    max_con_rate=-1
default    max_copies=-1
default    con_rate_offline=-1
default    failrate_cnt=40
default    failrate_interval=60
default    inherit_env=TRUE
           tcp_trace=FALSE
default    tcp_wrappers=FALSE
default    connection_backlog=10
default    tcp_keepalive=FALSE
```

Is `tcp_trace` disabled? *Yes.*

12. Shut down the Sol11-Desktop virtual machine.

Practice 12-2: Configuring System and Application Crash Facilities

Overview

In this practice, you work with the configuration of dump facilities. In case of system failures, you need to inspect the system facilities that are causing system crashes. Similarly, if your supported business applications fail, you can check the process that is failing. This information is helpful for an application analyst. This practice includes the following activities:

- Configuring system crash facilities
- Configuring dump facilities for business application failure

Note: The contents of your display may be different from the displays in this practice.

Task 1: Configuring System Crash Facilities

The following activities are included in this task:

- Displaying system dump configuration
- Determining the location of the dump device
- Changing the dump device
- Creating a system dump
- Analyzing and displaying the dump files
- Resetting the dump device to a ZFS device

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

3. Use the `dumpadm` command to display the system dump configuration.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dumpadm
      Dump content: kernel pages
       Dump device: /dev/zvol/dsk/rpool/dump (dedicated)
Savecore directory: /var/crash
  Savecore enabled: yes
   Save compressed: on
```

Where is the dump device pointing to? *The default* `rpool`

Can you display the device? *Yes, by using the* `zfs list` *command.*

```
root@s11-server1:~# zfs list rpool/dump
NAME         USED  AVAIL  REFER  MOUNTPOINT
rpool/dump  1.03G  20.3G  1.00G  -
```

Which pool does this dump device belong to? *It belongs to `rpool`.*
How much space is allocated to the dump device? *1.03 GB.*

4. Use the `format` command to partition `c7t5d0` and allocate 800 MB to slice 3.

```
root@s11-server1:~# format
Searching for disks...done

AVAILABLE DISK SELECTIONS:
       0. c7t0d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 4174 alt 2 hd 255 sec 63>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@0,0
       1. c7t2d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@2,0
       2. c7t3d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@3,0
       3. c7t4d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@4,0
       4. c7t5d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@5,0
       5. c7t6d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       6. c7t7d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0
        7. c7t8d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@6,0
       8. c7t9d0 <ATA-VBOX HARDDISK  -1.0  cyl 1022 alt 2 hd 64 sec 32>
          /pci@0,0/pci8086,2829@d/disk@7,0

Specify disk (enter its number): 4
```

Consult your instructor if you need assistance in formatting the disk.

5. Use the `dumpadm` command to change the dump device to the `/dev/dsk/c7t5d0s3` slice that you just formatted.

```
root@s11-server1:~# dumpadm -d /dev/dsk/c7t5d0s3
      Dump content: kernel pages
       Dump device: /dev/dsk/c7t5d0s3 (dedicated)
Savecore directory: /var/crash
  Savecore enabled: yes
   Save compressed: on
```

What is the purpose of changing the dump device? *Because you want to use another location (in this case, slice 3 on the `c7t5d0` disk) on a dedicated basis.*

One reason can be that your existing dump device is running out of space and you have storage space available on another disk or slice.

6. Check whether the specified `savecore` directory exists. If not, create it by using the `mkdir` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# ls /var/crash
```

7. Use the `savecore` command to dump the current system state, essentially the memory contents.

```
root@s11-server1:~# savecore -L
dumping to /dev/dsk/c7t5d0s3, offset 65536, content: kernel
 0:04 100% done
100% done: 103879 pages dumped, dump succeeded
savecore: System dump time: Tue Dec 20 10:23:31 2012

savecore: Saving compressed system crash dump in
/var/crash/vmdump.0
savecore: Decompress the crash dump with
'savecore -vf /var/crash/vmdump.0'
root@s11-server1:~# ls /var/crash
bounds     vmdump.0
```

Note there are only two files in your directory.

What are the contents of the `vmdump.0` file? *It contains the recently created dump in compressed format.*

8. Uncompress the `vmdump.0` file by using the `savecore` command.

```
root@s11-server1:~# savecore -vf /var/crash/vmdump.0
savecore: System dump time: Tue Dec 20 10:23:31 2012

savecore: saving system crash dump in /var/crash/{unix,vmcore}.0
Constructing namelist /var/crash/unix.0
Constructing corefile /var/crash/vmcore.0
 0:24 100% done: 103879 of 103879 pages saved
2266 (2%) zero pages were not written
0:24 dump decompress is done
```

9. Use the `cd` command to switch to the crash directory. Analyze the newly created files.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cd /var/crash
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# ls
bounds     unix.0     vmcore.0  vmdump.0
```

When `vmdump.0` was uncompressed, it created the `vmcore.0` file.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# file bounds
bounds:         ascii text
```

Because `bounds` is a text file, you can use the `cat` command to look at it.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# cat bounds
1
```

Can you guess what `1` represents? *Dump number 1.*

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# file unix.0
unix.0:         ELF 64-bit LSB executable AMD64 Version 1,
statically linked, not stripped, no debugging information
available
```

The executable and linking format (ELF) refers to this file as being an executable binary, so you cannot open it with the `cat` or `more` commands.

Try the `strings` command. Sometimes, it can convert the encoding.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# strings unix.0
```

No luck! The `strings` command cannot convert this binary executable.

10. Now analyze the `vmcore` dump file.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# file vmcore.0
vmcore.0:  SunOS 5.11 11.1 64-bit Intel live dump from 's11-
server1'
```

This is your uncompressed dump file. Use the `strings` command to display its contents.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# strings vmcore.0 | more
SunOS
s11-server1
5.11
```

```
11.1
i86pc
i86pc
aefffed4-f452-6dbc-f11e-cdb35c1bc0a2
.symtab
.strtab
.shstrtab
_END_
_START_
__return_from_main
__unsupported_cpu
.dtrace_induced
dtrace_badflags
dtrace_badtrap
_lwp_rtt
freq_tsc_loop
freq_tsc_perf_loop
freq_tsc_increase_count
freq_tsc_pit_did_not_wrap
…
…
…
```

What do the contents represent? *The processes that are running in memory currently*

11. Analyze the `vmdump` file.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# file vmdump.0
vmdump.0:  SunOS 5.11 11.1 64-bit Intel compressed live dump from
's11-server1'
root@s11-server1:/var/crash/s11-server1# strings vmdump.0 | more
SunOS
s11-server1
5.11
11.1
i86pc
i86pc
aefffed4-f452-6dbc-f11e-cdb35c1bc0a2
.symtab
.strtab
.shstrtab
_END_
_START_
__return_from_main
__unsupported_cpu
```

```
.dtrace_induced
dtrace_badflags
dtrace_badtrap
_lwp_rtt
freq_tsc_loop
freq_tsc_perf_loop
freq_tsc_increase_count
freq_tsc_pit_did_not_wrap
…
…
…
```

Does it look like a copy of the `vmcore.0` file? *Yes.*

12. Now use the `dumpadm` command to set the dump device back to the ZFS volume.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# dumpadm -d /dev/zvol/dsk/rpool/dump
      Dump content: kernel pages
       Dump device: /dev/zvol/dsk/rpool/dump (dedicated)
Savecore directory: /var/crash
  Savecore enabled: yes
   Save compressed: on
```

Recommended best practice: Always use the ZFS pool dump device. The reason is that you will have all the system-critical files in one place, in `rpool`.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/crash# cd
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Task 2: Configuring Dump Facilities for Business Application Failure

Task 2A: Configuring the Global File Path Pattern

The following activities are covered in this task:

- Displaying the current dump configuration
- Specifying the global file path pattern
- Generating the core dump
- Displaying the core dump

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.

2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 system as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

3. Use the `coreadm` command to display the current default dump configuration for the applications.

```
root@s11-server1:~# coreadm
     global core file pattern:
     global core file content: default
       init core file pattern: core
       init core file content: default
            global core dumps: disabled
       per-process core dumps: enabled
      global setid core dumps: disabled
 per-process setid core dumps: disabled
     global core dump logging: disabled
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Why is the `per-process core dumps` option enabled? *For business application processes. In case they terminate abnormally, you want to capture the critical information in the core dump.*

Why is the `global core dumps` option disabled? *You do not want to create a global dump every time an application process fails.*

4. Using the `mkdir` command, create the `/var/core` directory.

```
root@s11-server1:~# mkdir /var/core
```

You are creating this directory for the global dump location.

5. Use the `coreadm` command to enable global logging and configure the global core file pattern. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# coreadm -e log
root@s11-server1:~# coreadm -e global -g /var/core/core.%f.%p
root@s11-server1:~# coreadm
     global core file pattern: /var/core/core.%f.%p
     global core file content: default
       init core file pattern: core
       init core file content: default
            global core dumps: enabled
       per-process core dumps: enabled
      global setid core dumps: disabled
 per-process setid core dumps: disabled
     global core dump logging: enabled
```

You enabled global core dump logging to generate a message when the system creates a global core file.

How would you interpret the global core file pattern? *The directory is specified as* `/var/core`*. The dump files will be named* `core.%f.%p` *(%f for the file or the program being executed,* `%p` *for the process ID).*

6. Create a `dumpdir` in the `/var/tmp` directory. Then `cd` to /var/tmp/dumpdir.

```
root@s11-server1:~# mkdir /var/tmp/dumpdir
root@s11-server1:~# cd /var/tmp/dumpdir
root@s11-server1:/var/tmp/dumpdir#
```

You are creating this directory for the system to create a core file in it.

7. Using the `ps` command, display the process ID of the current shell process. Use the `kill -8` command to kill the shell process.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/tmp/dumpdir# ps
  PID TTY       TIME CMD
 3811 pts/1     0:00 bash
 3833 pts/1     0:00 ps
root@s11-server1:/var/tmp/dumpdir# kill -8 3811
Arithmetic Exception (core dumped)
```

Normally, this would kill your shell process and your terminal window would disappear. However, you are logged in to the `root` account by using the `su` command. Therefore, your invoked shell process will be terminated and you will go back to the `oracle` user.

8. Verify that the system generated a core file in the `dumpdir` directory.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

Switch to `/var/tmp/dumpdir` if the system takes you out of this directory.

```
root@s11-server1:~# cd /var/tmp/dumpdir
root@s11-server1:/var/tmp/dumpdir# ls
core
root@s11-server1:/var/tmp/dumpdir# file core
core:      ELF 32-bit LSB core file 80386 Version 1, from 'bash'
```

The system has created the core file in the “current directory,” meaning the current directory at the time of dump creation.

9. Use the `cd` command to switch to the `/var/core` directory and examine the dump created when you killed the `bash` process.

```
root@s11-server1:/var/tmp/dumpdir# cd /var/core
root@s11-server1:/var/core# ls
core.bash.3811
root@s11-server1:/var/core# file core*
core.bash.3811:  ELF 32-bit LSB core file 80386 Version 1, from
'bash'
root@s11-server1:/var/core# strings core.bash.3811 | more
CORE
pMND-
bash
-bash
CORE
i86pc
CORE
CORE
CORE
CORE
pMND-
bash
-bash
CORE
CORE
i86pc
CORE
CORE
SunOS
s11-server1
5.11
11.1
```

The `strings` command was able to convert the encoded contents to some extent. However, this file will be analyzed by the dump analyzing utilities. Dump analysis is covered in courses such as *Oracle Solaris 11 Workshop*.

10. Use the `tail` command to view the dump creation message in `syslog`.

```
root@s11-server1:~# tail /var/adm/messages
Dec 20 09:46:56 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 665016 kern.notice]
^M100% done: 102515 pages dumped,
Dec 20 09:46:56 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 851671 kern.notice] dump
succeeded
Dec 20 09:59:58 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 603404 kern.notice]
NOTICE: core_log: bash[3275] core dumped:
/var/core/core.bash.3275
Dec 20 10:18:00 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 454863 kern.info] dump
on /dev/dsk/c7t5d0s3 size 800 MB
Dec 20 10:23:31 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 111219 kern.notice]
dumping to /dev/dsk/c7t5d0s3, offset 65536, content: kernel
Dec 20 10:23:36 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 100000 kern.notice]
Dec 20 10:23:36 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 665016 kern.notice]
^M100% done: 103879 pages dumped,
Dec 20 10:23:36 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 851671 kern.notice] dump
succeeded
Dec 20 10:49:28 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 454863 kern.info] dump
on /dev/zvol/dsk/rpool/dump size 511 MB
Dec 20 14:09:34 s11-server1 genunix: [ID 603404 kern.notice]
NOTICE: core_log: bash[3811] core dumped:
/var/core/core.bash.3811
```

Did you configure the dump facilities to include this message here? *Yes, by using the `coreadm –e log` command.*

Task 2B: Configuring the Per-Process File Path Configuration

The following activities are covered in this task:

- Enabling per-process dump generation
- Specifying per-process generation

1. Verify that the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine is running. If the virtual machine is not running, start it now.
2. Log in to the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine as the `oracle` user. Use `oracle1` as the password. Assume administrator privileges.

```
oracle@s11-server1:~$ su -
Password:
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11      11.1       September 2012
root@s11-server1:~#
```

3. Use the `coreadm` command to display the current dump configuration for the applications.

```
root@s11-server1:~# coreadm
     global core file pattern: /var/core/core.%f.%p
     global core file content: default
       init core file pattern: core
       init core file content: default
            global core dumps: enabled
       per-process core dumps: enabled
      global setid core dumps: disabled
 per-process setid core dumps: disabled
     global core dump logging: enabled
```

If the `per-process core dumps` option is disabled, perform step 4 to enable it; otherwise, skip step 4. The disable setting means that for individual processes, no dumps will be generated.

4. Using the `coreadm` command, enable the per-process dump configuration. Verify the results.

```
root@s11-server1:~# coreadm -e process
root@s11-server1:~# coreadm
     global core file pattern: /var/core/core.%f.%p
     global core file content: default
       init core file pattern: core
       init core file content: default
            global core dumps: enabled
       per-process core dumps: enabled
      global setid core dumps: disabled
 per-process setid core dumps: disabled
     global core dump logging: enabled.
```

Is the `per-process core dumps` option enabled? *Yes, it is.*

5. Using the `su` command, log in to John Holt's account.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1     September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$
```

6. Create a directory called `corefiles` in your home directory.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ mkdir corefiles
```

You are creating this directory for the system to create a core file in it.

7. Using the `ps` command, display the process ID of the current shell process. Use the `coreadm` command to display the per-process file for John.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ ps
  PID TTY         TIME CMD
 3936 pts/1      0:00 bash
 3950 pts/1      0:00 ps
jholt@s11-server1:~$ coreadm 3936
3936:  core   default
```

Currently, if any of the processes created by John are aborted, the default core file will be created.

8. Use the `coreadm` command to configure the per-process file path.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ coreadm -p $HOME/corefiles/%f.%p $$
jholt@s11-server1:~$ coreadm 3936
3936:  /export/home/jholt/corefiles/%f.%p       default
```

Has the display changed? *Yes, now the new per-process file path pattern has taken effect.*

9. Use the `kill` command to kill the `bash` process.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ kill -8 3936
Arithmetic Exception (core dumped)
root@s11-server1:/var/core#
```

Because John's `bash` process is killed, you are back to the `root` role. Log in to John's account again.

```
root@s11-server1:~# su - jholt
Oracle Corporation     SunOS 5.11     11.1      September 2012
jholt@s11-server1:~$
```

10. After switching to the `corefiles` directory, use the `file` command to display the type of dump file created for John.

```
jholt@s11-server1:~$ cd corefiles
jholt@s11-server1:~/corefiles$ file bash*
bash.3936: ELF 32-bit LSB core file 80386 Version 1, from 'bash'
```

How can you display the contents of this dump file? *By using the `strings` command as in the previous task*

11. Shut down the Sol11-Server1 virtual machine. You have completed this practice and thus the final practice for this course. Congratulations!